

ინგლისური
ენა

A2 Plus
Low Intermediate

New Wave

Book 1

მოსწავლის წიგნი

ლია გოქსაძე
თამარ ფალავა

კონცეფციის ავტორი და რედაქტორი
რუსუდან ტყემალაძე

კონსულტანტი ბრიტანეთის საბჭო

New Wave

Book 1: Level A2 Plus

მოსწავლის წიგნი

ლია გოქსაძე, თამარ ფალავა

კონცეფციის ავტორი და რედაქტორი

რუსუდან ტყემალაძე

კონსულტანტი ბარი უოტსონი, ბრიტანეთის საბჭო

დიზაინი: გოგა დემეტრაშვილი, გიორგი ტაბლიაშვილი

ფოტოები: თამარ კორახაშვილი

სახელმძღვანელოს შემადგენელი ნაწილები:

1. მოსწავლის წიგნი
2. სავარჯიშოების კრებული
3. ტესტები
4. 1 აუდიოკასეტა

აუდიოჩანაწერი: ბარი უოტსონი, მონიშა ჯენსენი,
ლი ალენი, კეროლ კინდლინგი,
ნინო შანიძე, დათა თავაძე

საავტორო უფლება ტექსტზე © რუსუდან ტყემალაძე, ლია გოქსაძე, თამარ ფალავა

ყველა უფლება დაცულია

პირველი გამოცემა 2007

რედაქტირებული გამოცემა 2022

ISBN 99940-62-56-5

CONTENTS

| | | |
|----------------------------|---|-----|
| Unit 1 | Welcome to my website | 4 |
| Unit 2 | I cheated once | 8 |
| Unit 3 | Changes in the 21st century | 12 |
| Unit 4 | Do you worry about the environment? | 16 |
| Revision One | | 20 |
| Progress Test One | | |
| Unit 5 | The world of teenagers | 22 |
| Unit 6 | Computers at home | 26 |
| Unit 7 | Merry Christmas | 30 |
| Unit 8 | Christmas gifts | 34 |
| Revision Two | | 38 |
| Progress Test Two | | |
| Unit 9 | Have you got a talent? | 40 |
| Unit 10 | A Nobel prize winner | 44 |
| Unit 11 | Which TV channel do you watch? | 48 |
| Unit 12 | weather.com | 52 |
| Revision Three | | 56 |
| Progress Test Three | | |
| Unit 13 | Movie legends | 58 |
| Unit 14 | Dear Mari... .. | 62 |
| Unit 15 | Diaries - our secret friends | 66 |
| Unit 16 | Wonders of nature | 70 |
| Revision Four | | 74 |
| Progress Test Four | | |
| Unit 17 | Can you cook? | 76 |
| Unit 18 | You are what you eat | 80 |
| Unit 19 | Let's go shopping | 84 |
| Unit 20 | Quick shopping guide | 88 |
| Revision Five | | 92 |
| Progress Test Five | | |
| Unit 21 | Every city tells a story | 94 |
| Unit 22 | Let's go on a city tour | 98 |
| Unit 23 | Olympic champions | 102 |
| Unit 24 | The ancient Olympics | 106 |
| Revision Six | | 110 |
| Irregular verbs | | 112 |
| Wordlist | | 113 |
| Answer Key | | 117 |

WELCOME TO MY WEBSITE

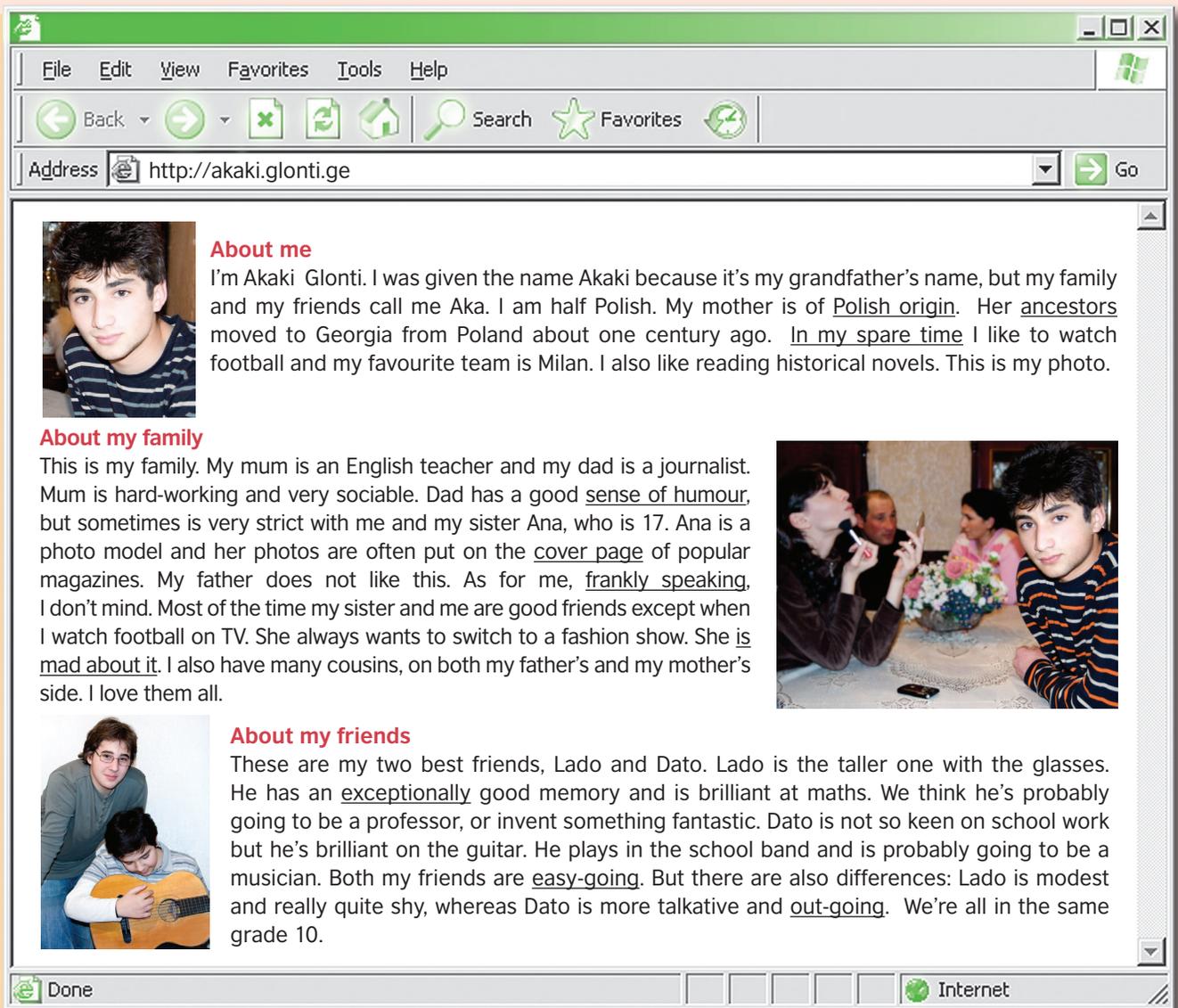
Grammar focus: Present Simple



Reading

1. Ask your partner if he/she...

- has his/her favourite website.
- has seen any person's or any company's information on the Internet.


2. Now read about a boy called Aka, his family and his friends. The information was put on Aka's website, on the Internet. Try to understand the underlined words and expressions from the context.


The screenshot shows a web browser window with the address bar containing `http://akaki.glonti.ge`. The page content includes:

About me
I'm Akaki Glonti. I was given the name Akaki because it's my grandfather's name, but my family and my friends call me Aka. I am half Polish. My mother is of Polish origin. Her ancestors moved to Georgia from Poland about one century ago. In my spare time I like to watch football and my favourite team is Milan. I also like reading historical novels. This is my photo.

About my family
This is my family. My mum is an English teacher and my dad is a journalist. Mum is hard-working and very sociable. Dad has a good sense of humour, but sometimes is very strict with me and my sister Ana, who is 17. Ana is a photo model and her photos are often put on the cover page of popular magazines. My father does not like this. As for me, frankly speaking, I don't mind. Most of the time my sister and me are good friends except when I watch football on TV. She always wants to switch to a fashion show. She is mad about it. I also have many cousins, on both my father's and my mother's side. I love them all.

About my friends
These are my two best friends, Lado and Dato. Lado is the taller one with the glasses. He has an exceptionally good memory and is brilliant at maths. We think he's probably going to be a professor, or invent something fantastic. Dato is not so keen on school work but he's brilliant on the guitar. He plays in the school band and is probably going to be a musician. Both my friends are easy-going. But there are also differences: Lado is modest and really quite shy, whereas Dato is more talkative and out-going. We're all in the same grade 10.


3. Read the text again and write the answers in your notebooks.

- | | |
|---|--------------------------------------|
| 1. Who is strict? <u>Aka's father</u> . | 5. Who loves watching fashion shows? |
| 2. Who has a good sense of humour? | 6. Who is sociable? |
| 3. Who is of Polish origin? | 7. Who is talkative? |
| 4. Who is easy-going? | |



4. Out of the 7 statements given below, only 4 are true according to the text. Write the true sentences in your notebooks.

- | | |
|---|-----------------------------------|
| 1. Aka's name is the same as his grandfather's. | 5. Lado is out-going. |
| 2. Aka's mother is a literature teacher. | 6. Dato has a good ear for music. |
| 3. Aka's Dad has a good sense of humour. | 7. Ana likes watching football. |
| 4. In his free time, Aka likes to read historical novels. | |

Vocabulary in Context



5. Read the phrases and find their English translations in the text. They are given in the same order as in the texts. Note that only some words are underlined in the texts.

- | | |
|---|---------------------------|
| 1. პოლონური წარმომავლობისაა: <u>is of Polish origin</u> | 2. თავისუფალ დროს |
| 3. კარგი იუმორის გრძნობა აქვს | 4. გარეკანი |
| 5. გულახდილად რომ ვთქვა | 6. არ დავეძებ |
| 8. განსაკუთრებულად კარგი მეხსიერება აქვს | 7. გიჟდება/ძალიან მოსწონს |
| | 9. უდარდელია |
| | 10. მოკრძალებულია |
| | 11. კონტაქტურია |



6. Match the phrases under A with the phrases under B and write seven sentences in your notebooks.

- | A | B |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. He will probably invent | a. an exceptionally good memory. |
| 2. I was given this name | b. cover page. |
| 3. My friend has | c. a special type of a machine. |
| 4. My sister and my brother | d. my father's side. |
| 5. He is my relative on | e. Indian fashion shows. |
| 6. This journal has a nice | f. are different. |
| 7. I always watch | g. by my mother. |



7. Read about the Meyer family and complete the sentences with the words from the box. One word is extra. Write your answers in your notebooks.

Portrait of a family: The Meyers

The Meyers live in Vancouver, in the west of Canada. The children are Andrew who is 16, Ben, aged 14, and little Sally who is 6. Their parents (1) are Paul and Barbara. Paul's _____ (2) moved to Canada from Germany at the beginning of the 20th century. So Paul is of German _____ (3).

Paul Meyers is a hard-working ambitious man and a _____ (4) father. He works for a computer _____ (5) which designs websites. Paul leaves his house very early every morning, about seven o'clock. His company's office is one hour's _____ (6) from his house.

The Meyer children are all _____ (7). Andrew, the eldest, is self-confident and out-going. He is _____ (8) about hard rock and always plays his music loud. Ben is quieter, but he has an excellent _____ (9) of humour and likes telling funny jokes. Sally doesn't go to school yet, but her parents can see that she has an _____ (10) good memory and they hope that she will do well at school.

- ancestors
- company
- drive
- different
- exceptionally
- origin
- mad
- parents
- strict
- sense
- side



Listening



8. What's it really like being 15? Interview your friend and write down the answers.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. What kind of music and movies do you like best? | 4. What's the worst thing about being 15? |
| 2. What's your school timetable? | 5. What do you argue about with your parents? |
| 3. What's the best thing about being 15? | 6. Are you proud of your country? Why?/Why not? |



9. *Crown, teenagers' magazine, asks the same questions to 15-year-old Giorgi from Georgia and Julie from the USA. Listen to the interview and write the phrases you hear in your notebooks. Out of the 8 phrases given you will hear only 5.*

- school timetable spare time dance music keen on
 have a lunch break by myself mad about proud of



10. *Who says what? Listen to the interview again and choose the appropriate name.*

| | Giorgi | Julie |
|--|--------|-------|
| 1. <i>Favourite movie is Shreck 2.</i> | | ✓ |
| 2. <i>Finishes school at 2.</i> | | |
| 3. <i>Likes going out with friends.</i> | | |
| 4. <i>Helps at home a lot.</i> | | |
| 5. <i>Wants to be more independent.</i> | | |
| 6. <i>Takes care of the little sister.</i> | | |
| 7. <i>Hates garbage in the streets.</i> | | |

Grammar: Present Simple

Look at the sentences:

- *I work as a journalist.*
- *My sister always buys fashion magazines.*

work and *buys* are Present Simple of the verbs: *work* and *buy*.

We use Present Simple to express permanent facts or repeated actions in the present. Present Simple is often used with: *usually, always, rarely, often, sometimes, never, every day/week/month/year.*

Look at the examples again. Do you remember the rule how to form Present Simple? Do you remember the rule for the third person? Ask your friend or your teacher for advice.

Now look at these sentences:

- *I don't often go to café.*
- *Does he usually come home late?*
- *Are you an out-going person?*

Can you write the rule for negative and interrogative forms of Present Simple? Is the rule the same for the third person? What is the rule for the verb *to be*? Discuss these questions with your friends, think of more examples and report your answers to the whole class.

Remember: *usually, always, rarely, often, sometimes* are always placed before the verb - *He often laughs loudly* - and after *to be* - *He is often late.*



11. *Out of the 10 sentences given below, only 7 are in the Present Simple. Find and write them in your notebooks.*

- 1. This makes a good story.
- 2. I talk to my grandparents every day.
- 3. Did you remember the rule?
- 4. We often disagreed in the past.
- 5. Does he feel independent?
- 6. They knew this long time ago.
- 7. All this doesn't sound interesting.
- 8. We want to talk to you.
- 9. He never forgets things.
- 10. I'm not very close to her.



12. *Your friend has a part-time job. Ask him/her about it. Write your questions.*

- 1. where/work Where do you work?
- 2. like/your job?
- 3. how many days/a week/work?
- 4. how many hours/ day/work?
- 5. go/usually/there/by bus?
- 6. how much/earn?
- 7. sometimes/work/on weekends?
- 8. your boss/ like / you?

13. Read about Jennie and Paula. Complete the stories with the verbs from the box in the Present Simple. For each story one word is extra.

Jennie

I am a nurse and I work at hospital. I l o o k (1) after sick children at night. I _____ (2) work at 10 o'clock and _____ (3) early in the morning. I _____ (4) during the night. Sometimes I sit and _____ (5) to a child. The children _____ (6) most of the time. At 8 o'clock the day nurse _____ (7) and wakes the children up. She _____ (8) them breakfast. I _____ (9) usually very tired by then.

- | | |
|-----------------|--------|
| arrive | be |
| give | finish |
| look | sleep |
| start | talk |
| not/sleep | try |

- | | |
|---------------|------|
| answer | be |
| cost (2) | eat |
| go | go |
| live | love |
| watch | |

Paula

Paula usually g o e s (1) to the cinema once a week. She _____ (2) to the cinema because she _____ (3) nearby. The ticket _____ (4) four dollars. Paula usually _____ (5) ice-cream which _____ (6) one dollar. Paula's grandparents _____ (7) going to the cinema with Paula. They _____ (8) all kinds of films, but comedies _____ (9) their favourite.

Action-oriented task: Create your online profile

Speaking



Work with a partner. Ask

each other about your families and friends to find out as much information as possible. Ask for example: How big is your family? Are any of your family members of non-Georgian origin? Do you ever argue with your brothers and sisters or your parents? If so, what do you argue about?

Now get ready to write



15. Your class is going to design a class website. Your classmate Dato is filling in the information about himself for it. Look at Dato's information. Make the same form in your notebook and write the information about yourself.

The screenshot shows two browser windows. The top window displays a profile for 'Dato Korkia' with the following information:

- My name: Dato Korkia
- My date of birth: 17 December, 2006
- My family: My mother, my father, my granny and Anna, my younger sister. My granny is of Greek origin.
- My favourite things: My dog Roy and my laptop
- My favourite band or singer: I like Billie Eilish
- What I like: Hiking and climbing mountains
- What I don't like: Putting things in order and waking up early
- What do I argue about with my parents: About my clothes. They don't like how I dress.

The bottom window shows a blank form with the same labels for the user to complete:

- My name
- My date of birth
- My family
- My favourite things
- My favourite band or singer
- What I like
- What I don't like
- What do I argue about with my parents.

I CHEATED ONCE

Grammar focus: Past Simple



Reading



1. Take two minutes to tell your partner about the day when you missed the school and your teacher asked for a note of explanation from your parents. Why did you miss the school? Did you bring the note from your parents?



2. Now read about two fifteen-year-old girls, Eliza and Nino. They speak about their schools. Try to guess the meaning of the underlined words. Then do the tasks which follow.



Eliza

I live with my family in the south of England, and I go to a nearby secondary school. I have quite a busy schedule. Right now I am getting ready for my GCSEs, since I'm going to take these exams at the end of this year. GCSE means General Certificate of Secondary Education. All of us take GCSE exams in English and maths, but most students take exams in other subjects as well. Some really good students take GCSEs in eight or ten different subjects. You can choose the exams that you think you will pass. I myself will be taking GCSEs in Science, which includes Biology, Chemistry and Physics, and French. They are my favourite subjects and I think I will pass them easily. I don't like maths. It's my least favourite subject. And even though I know it's wrong, I must admit, once I even cheated in a maths test.

The gym in our school is well-equipped, and we've even got an indoor swimming pool, although it's only 15 metres long. I used to go swimming last year but I don't any more. I am more keen on rock music now. I am also very keen to have a moped. My parents promised to buy me one next year, because I'll be able to ride one when I'm sixteen. And in two years' time, when I'm seventeen, I'll be able to have a real driving license. So I might even have a car then, if my parents can afford it.

One bad thing about school is that if I miss a class, or if I'm absent from school, the school Head says I have to bring a note of explanation written by my parents. This can sometimes make my life really difficult.

Nino

My school is in an old small town in East Georgia. I live near the school and usually walk there with one or two friends who live near me. Classes start at 9 and finish at 1.40, and we have six lessons of 45 minutes each. This is what should happen, but it's not always true. In winter, when it's often very cold, lesson time is often cut to 40 minutes. But there are some good things about my school. It's always kept clean, for example, and there are pots of flowers on the classroom shelves and pictures of famous people on the walls.

As for the subjects we learn, chemistry and physics are not among my favourites! But I am quite keen on Georgian literature, English and history. I am also keen on poetry and often take part in "the days of poetry" at school. I like sports too and one sport I'd love to be able to play is table tennis. But unfortunately the gym in our school has no equipment for this.

One day last year my friend Ketu and I decided to miss a class and we went to eat some ice-cream instead. Unfortunately, this caused problems for me because the school Head wanted an explanation from my parents. You can imagine what happened then!



3. Say who are the sentences about: Eliza or Nino? Choose the appropriate name.

| | Eliza | Nino |
|---|-------|------|
| 1. Her schedule is busy. | ✓ | |
| 2. She likes literature classes. | | |
| 3. She is preparing for important exams. | | |
| 4. Physics is not her favourite subject. | | |
| 5. In a maths test, she copied from her friend. | | |
| 6. She missed a class and this caused a family problem. | | |
| 7. She isn't allowed to drive a car. | | |

4. Read the text again. Then write down short answers to the questions below.

- Where does Eliza come from? The south of England.
- What subjects is Eliza going to take?
- What does GCSE mean?
- At what age can Eliza drive a car?
- How does Nino go to school?
- What subjects does Nino like?
- What sport would Nino like to do?
- Who did Nino go to the ice-cream parlor with one day?

Vocabulary in Context

5. For each word or expression given below find the word and phrase in the text which has a similar meaning. Only some words are underlined in the text. The words are given in the same order as in the texts.

- 1.time-table: s c h e d u l e 2.copy 3.sports hall 4.like (v)
5.document allowing to drive 6.director 7.made smaller 8. well-known

6. Match the underlined words with their Georgian equivalents. The contexts will help.

- | | |
|---|--------------------------|
| 1. The gym is <u>well-equipped</u> | a. შეიცავს |
| 2. She is <u>keen on</u> music. | b. კარგად აღჭურვილი |
| 3. The school day <u>runs</u> | c. მოსწონს |
| 4. I <u>cheated</u> in maths | d. პრობლემები შექმნა |
| 5. Science <u>includes</u> biology | e. მართვის მოწმობა |
| 6. My <u>schedule</u> is intensive | f. გადავინერე (მოვიტყუე) |
| 7. She doesn't have a <u>driving license</u> | g. ახსნა-განმარტება |
| 8. This <u>caused</u> problems | h. ცხრილი |
| 9. The school Head wanted an <u>explanation</u> | i. გრძელდება |

7. Michael and Goga speak about their school experience. In their stories some words are missing. Choose the best word or phrase from the boxes to complete the sentences. Remember, there are two extra words in each box.

Michael: I went to school on the o u t s k i r t s (1) of London. The school had a nice library and its gym was very ____ (2). But for me the most important thing was not the school itself but the other kids who ____ (3) there. My friends and I used to spend a lot of time together in drama and ____ (4) music clubs. I think it's friends and relations that ____ (5) your time at school good or bad.

caught
cheat
the Internet
famous
over
keen on
went

Goga: We learned a lot about ____ (6) people in the history of Georgia. All my friends knew that I was especially ____ (7) history. Perhaps I liked it because I was good at remembering dates. Once, when we were taking a history test, I passed the answers to my best friend and got ____ (8) by the teacher! Actually I didn't ____ (9) very often. Though maybe once or twice I looked ____ (10) my shoulder and asked a friend for an answer.

cheat
famous
make
~~outsirts~~
rock
well-equipped
went



Then & Now

The school newsletter



8. Alex, a 15-year-old student, is writing an article for the school newsletter about schools of his parents. To collect information on this, Alex interviews some people, including his dad. Listen to the interview and write the phrases you hear in your notebook. You will hear only 5 of these 7 phrases.

the same age as wear uniforms at once didn't care much
keep in touch almost no exception in those years



9. Listen to the interview again and write down short answers to the questions below. One example is given.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. When did Alex's dad go to school? <u>In the seventies.</u> | 4. What age did he leave school? |
| 2. Were his Dad's teachers very strict? | 5. Did he decide what job he would do before he left school? |
| 3. Did he enjoy going to school? | |

Grammar: Past Simple

Look at the sentences:

- I joined a rock music club last year.
- The school Head wanted an explanation.

joined and wanted are Past Simple of the verbs: join and want.

We use Past Simple to express a past state or action. Past Simple is often used with the words which indicate past time, such as: yesterday, then, last week, a year ago.

Look at the examples again. Do you remember the rule how to form the Past Simple for regular verbs? Ask your friend or your teacher for advice. Some verbs do not follow this general rule and form the Past Simple form in their own way. They are called irregular verbs. Which irregular verb forms do you remember? Refer to the irregular verbs list in the end of the book.

Now look at these sentences:

- I didn't work then.
- Did you take a maths exam?
- How long did you stay there?

Can you write the rule for negative and interrogative forms of the Past Simple? Is the rule the same or different for the verb to be? Discuss these questions with your friends, think of more examples and report your answers to the whole class.



10. Arrange the sentences into two groups: Present Simple and Past Simple. Write your answers in your notebooks.

- | | | |
|------------------------------|------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| <u>All finished well</u> | I don't have a driving license yet | We decided to miss a class |
| The gym wasn't equipped well | Did your parents enjoy school? | She rarely cheats |
| Were they very strict? | It's hard to say | We are all music lovers |

| Present simple | Past simple |
|----------------|---------------------------|
| | <i>All finished well.</i> |
| | |
| | |
| | |



11. Your friend has just come back from the USA where he/she spent one year as an exchange student. You ask him/her about it. Write your questions.

- | | |
|--|-----------------------------|
| 1. enjoy/school <u>Did you enjoy school?</u> | 5. the food/good? |
| 2. how long/stay? | 6. go/a rock music concert? |
| 3. where/stay? | 7. you/work? |
| 4. what/do/in the evenings? | 8. you/have/part-time job? |

12. In the newspaper article "Teenagers at Work" some verbs are missing. Choose the appropriate verbs and put them either in the Present Simple or in the Past Simple. Read the whole article first carefully.

Teenagers at Work



Under UK law, teenagers between the ages 13 and 16 are allowed to work two hours a day. The statistics for 2015 s a y (1) that 43% of schoolchildren between the ages of 13 and 17 _____ (2) in some kind of job in the UK. At present, more than two million school-children _____ (3) busy doing many different part-time jobs in Britain. The most popular ways of earning extra pocket money are car washing and baby-sitting in the evenings or at weekends.

In European countries, the jobs that children _____ (4) nowadays are very different from what children were doing in the days of Charles Dickens. In the 19th century, instead of going to school, children _____ (5) to work long hours and the work they did was hard. Because they were small, they _____ (6) up inside chimneys to clean them. And many children did dangerous jobs in coal-mines.

Today teenagers in Britain who _____ (7) to work are protected by the law. It is illegal to make children work long hours or do dangerous jobs. But the British government _____ (8) that it is good for people to do some part-time work and _____ (9) a little money when they are young. They say that this kind of work _____ (10) young people to feel independent.

be
believe
climb
do
earn
have
help
say
want
work

Action-oriented task: Have a class debate

Speaking

13.

Some people say that it's good for teenagers to work part-time, but others say that work takes young people away from school. What do YOU think? Work in small groups. Decide whether you are FOR or AGAINST teenagers working. Then find 3 arguments that you all agree on, and report what you think to the class.

Now get ready to write

14. In your notebooks write 3 sentences FOR and 3 sentences AGAINST teenagers working. Try to use the same sentence patterns as given in the examples below.

E.g.

Arguments for teenagers working:

- I think it's very good when a teenager works because he/she can earn some pocket money.

Arguments against teenagers working:

- Working is a waste of time for young people. It's better if they read books instead.

15. Read the information about what young people in Britain are allowed to do at different ages. Then write several sentences about what young Georgians are allowed to do. Ask your teacher or your parents to help you.

Age 13: may have a part-time job.

Age 14: are allowed to go into bars, but not to drink alcohol.

Age 16: are allowed to live alone, to ride a moped, to marry if their parents agree, to buy beer.

Age 17: can drive a car.

Age 18: can vote, get married without their parents' permission, get tattooed, drink in pubs.

Use this model: *At the age of _____ young Georgians are allowed/can/may _____*

You may use these words and expressions: *vote/drive a car/get married/ buy cigarettes and alcohol/ have a part-time job.*

CHANGES IN THE 21ST CENTURY

Grammar focus: Future with 'will'



Reading



1. Before reading the text below take two minutes to discuss this question with your partner:

- What do you think will change in 50 years' time?



2. Now read three possible answers to the same question. Read the texts fast and try to guess what the underlined words mean. Then do the tasks below.

Jane

I think that one big change in the twenty-first century is that people will live longer. With healthier lifestyles and better medical care the average person will probably live to the age of 90 instead of 75 like today. I think doctors will be able to cure diseases which are incurable today, such as cancer and AIDS. I also believe that smoking is slowly going to disappear.

Salome

I think that in the 21st century more and more people will be able to send and receive different kinds of information by using the Internet and mobile phones. With the help of these technologies people will get education or do business without leaving their homes. I suppose you can call it the information age, and it comes after the agricultural and industrial ages, which have changed the way everybody lives.

Dato

I believe that the big changes for the twenty-first century will be changes in economic conditions. In 30 or 40 years people will do business better. They will have better homes and eat healthier food than they do today. More goods will be produced, and so perhaps rich countries will be able to give more help to poorer countries. The number of poor and hungry people in the world will go down. I believe countries as well as people will be richer in the 21st century.



3. Who speaks about...? Choose the appropriate name.

| Who speaks about | Jane | Salome | Dato |
|-------------------------------|------|--------|------|
| <i>healthier food</i> | | | ✓ |
| <i>changes in the economy</i> | | | |
| <i>better medical care</i> | | | |
| <i>information age</i> | | | |



4. Find four statements below which are true according to the information given in the texts.

1. Jane says that doctors can cure AIDS today.
2. She also thinks that people will have longer lives in the 21st century.
3. Dato believes that we will all be richer in 30-40 years' time.
4. According to Salome, we will be able to get more information in the 21st century.
5. Dato thinks that poor countries won't receive any help from rich countries.
6. Salome says that it will be impossible to get education at home.
7. Jane thinks that the number of smokers will go down in this century.

Vocabulary in Context



5. Read the phrases. Then find their English equivalents in the text above. The phrases are arranged according to the paragraphs. Note that some phrases are not underlined in the text. Compare your answers to your friend's.

Jane:

- a. დაავადებების განკურნება b. სამედიცინო მომსახურება c. განუკურნებელი დაავადება d. გაუჩინარებას აპირებს

Salome:

- a. ინფორმაციის მიღება b. განათლების მიღება c. ბიზნესის წარმართვა d. ინფორმაციის საუკუნე

Dato:

- a. ეკონომიკური მდგომარეობა b. უფრო ჯანმრთელი საკვები c. უფრო მეტი საქონელი d. მჯერა



6. Read the text and complete the sentences with ONE word. The words are from the texts. One word is extra.

Jane thinks that in the twenty-first century medical care (1) will be better and that people will live _____ (2).

Salome thinks that more people will send and _____ (3) information through the Internet and that the Internet, together with other technologies, will _____ (4) people to be more educated.

Dato believes that there will be big changes in the world's _____ (5) conditions. In the coming years, people will _____ (6) in better homes and eat _____ (7) food.

- ~~care~~
- changes
- economic
- healthier
- help
- live
- longer
- receive



7. This is what Steve thinks will happen in the 21st century. Complete the sentences with the words given below. One word is extra.

- believe
- changes
- civilized
- educated
- healthy
- information
- incurable
- ~~think~~
- technologies

Steve:

I think (1) that in the twenty-first century we will see big _____ (2) in our lifestyle. Let's take food and smoking, for example. Today we know more about _____ (3) eating and the bad effects of smoking than our parents did. I also _____ (4) that in 20 or 30 years every family will have a computer and be able to receive _____ (5) on the Internet. But I don't think that people will be better _____ (6), or that they will know more. They simply will have better machines, that's all. Do better _____ (7) make the world a better place to live? If so, the 21st century is going to be more _____ (8) than the 20th century.



Listening



8. You will hear Sophie, a 15-year-old girl, speaking about the things that will happen in ten years' time. In the recording Sophie uses these phrases. Before listening, put the phrases into 2 groups: A. changes which will happen in Georgia; B. changes which will happen in her personal life. Then listen to the recording and check if you were right.

- live better receive medical care be married
be earning more money have a dog

- A. changes in Georgia: live better
B. changes in Sophie's personal life:

9. Listen to the recording again and write down four things which Sophie thinks will be better in ten years' time. Then see who else has written the same as you. E.g. better medical care.

Grammar: Future with 'will'

Look at the sentences:

- People will live longer.
- I will have a dog.

will live and *will have* are the future of the verbs *live* and *have*. *will + verb* is mostly used to express future predictions, promises and offers. This is sometimes called the Future Simple. With *will* you can use the phrases: *I think, I believe, I hope, I promise, I don't think*.

- I hope the average student will be better informed.
- I don't think many things will change.

Time expressions used with *will* are: *tomorrow, tonight, next week/month/year, in a week/month etc.* Now look at negative and interrogative forms:

- Will you be married then?
- I won't have a dog.

Look at the examples again. Can you write the rule for forming the Future Simple: its affirmative, negative and interrogative forms? If you need help, ask your friend or your teacher. Remember: *I will = I'll; I will not = I won't*

10. Put in *will ('ll)* or *won't*.

1. He is fourteen now. So next year he'll be fifteen.
2. I _____ be in London next month. I'm going to see Big Ben first.
3. You have worked hard for this test. I think you _____ pass it easily.
4. I'm sorry about what happened yesterday. I promise it _____ happen again.
5. I've bought Lily a present. Do you think she _____ like it?
6. In the 21st century people will know more. They _____ be better educated.
7. Don't ask Sophie. She _____ know the answer.

11. Where will you be? Write true sentences about yourself. Start 3 sentences with: *I'll probably be* and 3 sentences with: *I definitely won't be*. After you have finished, try to guess what your friends have written.

Where will you be?

1. Tomorrow at 10 o'clock in the morning I'll probably be at school.
2. Tomorrow at 6.30 in the evening _____
3. Next Saturday evening _____
4. Next Sunday afternoon _____
5. Next summer _____
6. In five years' time _____

12. In the text below about the future of computers ten verbs are missing, all of them with "will" expressing future. Complete the sentences with the appropriate words from the box. There is one extra verb. More than one choice is possible.

The future of computers

Many people believe that in a few years' time computers will be (1) much more common than TV sets: everyone will use one, and some people _____ (2) two. People _____ (3) computers for all kinds of jobs. For example: computers _____ (4) their owners find out where to buy things and at what price. And they _____ (5) them to make coffee or prepare dinner. Kids in every country _____ (6) even more time at their computers, which they _____ (7) to do their homework. And just like it is today, computers _____ (8) them busy for hours playing computer games! Of course, the question everyone _____ (9) is: "Do I really want a computer to tell me what to do?" It _____ (10) hard to see the advantages of having a computer, but will anyone really want a machine to think for them?

- ask (2)
- ~~be~~
- have
- help (3)
- spend
- show
- keep
- not/ be
- use

➔  **Speaking**

13.

What will you do? You and your friends want to do something to make your school better, and you have 5000 laris to spend. Work in a small group, and decide on THREE things that you will change in your school. Then tell the rest of the class what you have decided.

You can talk about football, a gym, computers, musical instruments, a library, a school bus, sports equipment..... or anything else that will make your school better.

E.g. *We will build a good football stadium for the school. We will buy tents and sleeping bags for camping at the weekend.*



↓

14. What do you think will be different in your town or your village in three years' time? What will be the same? Make predictions. You should use: *I think... , I believe..., I don't think..., will probably...*

E.g.

- *I think that in three years' time our town will have a swimming pool.*
- *In five years' time, I don't think we will have problems with the Internet connection.*

Think of at least 5 sentences. Discuss your lists in small groups and see what you have in common. Then discuss your 'group list' with the whole class and say why you think your ideas are best.

➔  **Now get ready to write**

↓

15. What do you think will be different in your town or your village in 10 years' time? Write 5 sentences about 5 changes that you expect.

Use the phrases: *I hope..., I believe ..., I don't think...,*

E.g. *I believe that in ten years' time our town will be an international tourist site.*

DO YOU WORRY ABOUT THE ENVIRONMENT?

Grammar focus: adjectives and adverbs



Reading



1. Read the signs below. Which one is different from the others and why? Share your answer with your partner.

Switch off your mobile phones!

No fishing!
The river is polluted

DANGER! POLLUTION!
NO SWIMMING!

Don't leave garbage in the street!



2. Read the text below quickly. Then decide which of these three titles is the best one. Tell your partner which title you have chosen and why. Try to understand the meaning of the underlined words from the context.



- Forests in Georgia
- Planet Earth in danger
- Dying trees

Do you know that our planet faces many problems? The environment – the air, water, plants, animals, fish and people themselves – is in danger. Here are some of the problems, which we started to think about only recently.

- The world's trees are being cut down for wood faster than they can grow.
- Many animal, bird and plant species are in danger.
- Too many fish are being taken from the sea.
- The atmosphere- the air we breathe - is poisoned by car and factory fumes.
- People cause pollution when they smoke, when they use aerosol sprays or throw away empty Coca-Cola bottles or chocolate wrappers.
- Air pollution affects rivers and lakes. Rivers flow into the sea, carrying their pollution with them, with the result that the sea becomes dirty and polluted. This pollution kills fishes, other water animals and plants.
- Loud noise from factories, road traffic and sound systems can damage people's hearing.

Even in Georgia, nature faces problems too. Forests, which cover more than 40% of Georgia, are getting smaller every year. In many parts of Georgia, people depend on the fire-wood from trees and bushes to heat their houses. And there are even people who thoughtlessly cut trees down to make space to build their houses.



3. Read the text again and find answers to the questions below. The first one has been done for you.

1. What are the world's trees being cut down for? for wood.
2. What makes the atmosphere dirty and poisoned?
3. When can people make nature dirty?
4. How do seas become dirty?
5. What kind of pollution is bad for your ears?
6. How much of Georgia is covered by trees?
7. What two reasons are given why people in Georgia cut down trees and bushes?

4. Match the underlined words with their Georgian equivalents. The contexts will help you.

- | | |
|--|-------------------------|
| 1. Cars and factories produce <u>fumes</u> . | a. დაუფიქრებლად |
| 2. The planet is <u>in danger</u> . | b. სახეობა, ჯიშო |
| 3. There are 350 bird <u>species</u> in Georgia. | c. დაბინძურება (ჰაერის) |
| 4. In big industrial cities air is often <u>polluted</u> . | d. გარემო |
| 5. The <u>environment</u> is the nature around us. | e. გამონაბოლქვი |
| 6. Many cars cause air <u>pollution</u> . | f. დაბინძურებულია |
| 7. They <u>thoughtlessly</u> cut down trees. | g. საშიშროება ემუქრება |

5. Match the words under A with the words under B and write eight phrases in your notebooks. For example: aerosol + sprays. In some cases there is more than one ending.

A

| | |
|--------------|--------------|
| 1. aerosol | 5. air |
| 2. coca-cola | 6. road |
| 3. animal | 7. chocolate |
| 4. water | 8. world's |

B

| | |
|--------------|------------|
| a. pollution | e. sprays |
| b. trees | f. species |
| c. traffic | g. plants |
| d. wrappers | h. bottles |

6. Complete the sentences in your notebooks with the words from the box. There is one extra word.

Environment means “surrounding”. We often use this word to mean our *natural* (1) surroundings. Mountains and valleys, seas and rivers, _____ (2) and animals - all of these make up our natural environment. Our environment is also _____ (3) by people. Villages, towns and cities are the _____ (4) where we live. Our country is also our environment, and our planet _____ (5) is the global environment. Sadly, although people are part of the environment, they often change and _____ (6) it. People cause pollution when they _____ (7) damage nature. Therefore the land, the sea and the air are often affected by _____ (8). Today there are many organizations whose job is to try to _____ (9) nature. The World Wildlife Fund (WWF) is probably the best-known and most active among them.

Earth
environment
damage
made
plants
traffic
pollution
protect
~~natural~~
thoughtlessly

➡ | Listening

7. Springfield is a small town in the USA. In recent years its streets have become overcrowded by traffic. The town authorities have decided to build a by-pass road (შემოვლითი გზა) around the town. Two engineers, Peter and Mary, are discussing the problem. Listen to them and write the words you hear. You will hear 10 out of the 14 words given.

| | | | | | | |
|----------|---------|----------|--------|-------------|----------|---------|
| problem | a bus | traffic | cafés | restaurants | lifeless | work |
| polluted | improve | business | cinema | jobs | a park | attract |

8. Listen to the discussion again and choose the appropriate name.

| Who... | Peter | Mary |
|--|-------|------|
| 1. thinks that the town might become a useless and silent place? | ✓ | |
| 2. says that tourists use shops and cafés in the town centre? | | |
| 3. talks about what might happen to shops and cafés? | | |
| 4. says that the town center is very noisy and polluted? | | |
| 5. talks about fewer job opportunities? | | |
| 6. talks about places for young people to go to? | | |

Grammar: Adjectives and Adverbs

Look at the sentences:

- This is an empty Coca-Cola bottle.
- Sea becomes polluted.

empty and *polluted* are **adjectives** (ზედსართავი). Adjectives describe nouns. They say what something is like. Adjectives come before nouns: *poisoned air*, *clean streets* or after **to be**, **to become**, **to look**; *water is dirty*, *air becomes polluted*, *you look tired*.

Now look at these sentences:

- People thoughtlessly cut trees down.
- We started to think about these problems only recently.

thoughtlessly and *recently* are **adverbs** (ზმნიზედა). Adverbs describe verbs. They say *how*, *where*, *when*, *how often* someone does something. E.g. *She left us quickly*. *The train moved slowly*.

Look at the examples again. Do you remember the rule for forming the adverbs from the adjectives? Do you remember the adverbs which do not follow the rule? You can ask your friend or your teacher for advice.



9. **Each of the sentences given below contains one or more adjectives and adverbs. Find them and write them down in two groups: adjectives and adverbs. Compare your list with your partner's.**

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. In big industrial cities the air is polluted. | 6. There are many fast rivers in Georgia. |
| 2. The World Wide Fund is a well-known organization. | 7. This makes the town center extremely polluted. |
| 3. It's really worrying that ... | 8. Recently we began to think about... |
| 4. Don't throw empty bottles away. | 9. Loud music can damage people's hearing. |
| 5. Unfortunately there are people, who... | 10. It's a hard task. |

Adjectives: *industrial*

Adverbs: *really*



10. **Complete the second sentence so that it means the same as the first.**

- Simon always speaks politely. *Simon is very polite.*
- Nick is a fast driver. Nick drives _____
- Anthony is a hard-working person. He usually works _____
- My mother is a good cook. My mother cooks _____
- Maria's dancing is beautiful. She dances _____
- My sister speaks German perfectly. My sister's German is _____
- This problem started quite recently. This problem is quite _____



11. **Complete the sentences with the words from the box.**

Yesterday my sister Lela came back from Holland where she spent two weeks as a tourist with two of her friends. The flight was quite long (1) - over three hours - but, as Lela said, when she was on the plane, the time seemed to go _____ (2).

Lela said that Holland is environmentally clean - not _____ (3) at all. The Dutch, and their government, take _____ (4) care of the natural environment. Lela and her friends stayed in a students' camp, sleeping in tents, not _____ (5) from Amsterdam. Students from _____ (6) countries of the world were staying there. They were all very _____ (7) and Lela says they all spoke English _____ (8). Many things surprised Lela and her friends in Holland, but what surprised her most was the number of bicycles. She said that bicycles are a _____ (9) kind of transport for the Dutch. There were hundreds of bicycles on the roads all day and all night. There was never a _____ (10) moment.



different
good
fast
far
favourite
friendly
~~long~~
nicely
quiet
polluted
well



Speaking



12. **Decide with your partner how you would answer these questions. Then report your answers to the whole class. How much have you got in common?**

1. When you make a fire in the forest, do you
 - put it out when you leave the place?
 - leave the fire as it is?
2. After having a meal in the open air, do you
 - leave the dirty paper and empty bottles where they are?
 - pick them up and put them in a special place?
3. When you are eating sunflower seeds, do you
 - throw the shells away in the street?
 - keep them in a piece of paper?
4. When you eat chocolate or chewing gum in the street, do you
 - throw the wrapper away?
 - drop it in a waste bin?
5. At New Year do you prefer to have
 - a real fir tree?
 - an artificial fir tree?



13.

There is a nice park near your school. You and your friends like to go to the park after classes and hang out together there. The town authorities have decided to build a small hotel in the park. You don't like the idea and want the park to be left as it is. Work in two groups: group 1: schoolchildren, group 2: town authorities. Think of at least four arguments to defend your position.

E.g.

Group 1:

Schoolchildren: *Building a hotel in the park will make the park noisier.*

Group 2:

Town authorities: *A nice small hotel in the park will attract tourists.*

- **When you are ready, tell your arguments to the other group and listen to theirs. Use the phrases: We think that...; In our opinion...; It's a good idea but...; We agree; We don't agree.**



Now get ready to write



14. **Write 4 sentences for a school newspaper to describe the problem, and to say what you personally think about it. Start with the sentence:**

- *The town authorities have decided to build a hotel in the park next to our school. I think that...*



1. Put the verbs into the correct form. Use Present Simple, Past Simple or Future Simple.

1. Maria doesn't watch (not/watch) TV very often. She _____ (like) going to the movies more.
2. At my school classes _____ (finish) at 2 o'clock. What time _____ (classes/ finish) at your _____ school?
3. I _____ (not/understand) this word. What _____ (it/mean)?
4. I _____ (remember) one day at school best. I was taking a history exam and I _____ (pass) the answers to my friend and was caught by the teacher.
5. I _____ (be) more keen on physics. And what subjects _____ (you/keen on) most?
6. When my dad _____ (be) at school he liked maths but he _____ (not be /good at) biology and once even _____ (cheat) at it.
7. This time next year I _____ (be) in Bakuriani. Where _____ (you/be)?
8. How often _____ (you/go) to clubs? When I was your age, I _____ (not/like) to spend my _____ free time on computer games. I _____ (enjoy) clubs more.
9. The 20th century _____ (be) the century of modern technologies, but I think that the 21st century _____ (be) the century of better medical care. What _____ (you/ think)?
10. If people don't take more care of the environment, the air and the sea _____ (become) more polluted and we _____ (face) a lot of health problems.
11. When _____ (you/start) writing novels? I know that you _____ (write) your first novel when you _____ (be) 12 years old. _____ (be) that right?
12. George is in Italy now and _____ (not/be) here till next Monday. Nick _____ (not/arrive) till next week either.



2. Most of these sentences contain one mistake. Correct each one or, if there is no mistake, write **RIGHT**.

1. What's the matter? You looks very sad. ... you look ...
2. My friend found life in Paris a bit difficult. He didn't speak French. RIGHT
3. We had a look round the National Museum. There was so much in there.
4. Don't worry about tomorrow's exam. I'm sure it is all right.
5. This event were an excellent experience for us all.
6. We always travel by bus. We didn't own a car.
7. Vicky was having a beautiful dream when his alarm clock rings.
8. What did you do after you leave school?
9. Now I understand why you wanted to become a doctor so much.
10. If you don't put your jacket on, you feel cold.
11. I believe that the next generation will be more keen on classical music.
12. The Prime Minister arrives yesterday from his European a tour.



3. Adjective or adverb? Choose and say the right word.

1. As for me (frank/frankly) speaking, I don't mind.
2. (Loud/Loudly) noise from factories can damage people's hearing.
3. People (thoughtless/thoughtlessly) cut trees down and build their houses.
4. Don't climb that hill. It doesn't look (safe/safely).
5. He looked at me (angry/angrily) when I entered the room.
6. Fathers are sometimes very (strict/strictly) to their children.
7. I've heard that Holland is (environmental/environmentally) very clean.
8. My brother Nick has an (exceptional/exceptionally) sense of humour.
9. The gym in our school is not equipped (good/well).
10. My holiday was too short. It passed so (quick/quickly).
11. Are you usually (nervous/nervously) at the exams?
12. How (possible/possibly) is it to walk 4 kilometres within one hour?

↓

4. Complete each sentence with the appropriate phrase. One phrase is extra.

caused a problem do business spare time driving license economic conditions
 in danger earn money medical care Russian origin town authorities
 popular activities is poisoned worry about

1. What do you do in your spare time?
2. My grandma's surname is Kazakova. She is of _____.
3. The Patrol stopped him because he didn't have a _____.
4. Giorgi and Levan missed a class and this _____.
5. More people will have a chance to _____ and earn more money in our country in the near future.
6. In the mountainous regions the _____ are usually worse.
7. I think that under the age of 10 _____ should be free.
8. Be careful! Don't drink that water! It _____.
9. According to the Georgian law at the age of 16 teenagers can work and _____.
10. The whole village has been flooded. The people's lives are _____.
11. _____ should always know and understand what people need.
12. We should all _____ the environment and keep it ecologically clean.

↓

5. How many words do you know? In your notebooks write the Georgian translation next to each word. Then check the meaning in the Wordlist at the end of the book. Count the correct answers and write the number. All the words are from units 1-4.

Out of 30 words I know _____.

- | | | |
|----------------------------|---------------|-------------------------|
| 1. magazine <u>ჟურნალი</u> | 2. ancestor | 3. sociable |
| 4. easy-going | 5. cover page | 6. gym |
| 7. schedule | 8. equipment | 9. education |
| 10. conditions | 11. average | 12. probably |
| 13. health | 14. disappear | 15. modern technologies |
| 16. I believe | 17. I worry | 18. pollution |
| 19. poisoned | 20. species | 21. environment |
| 22. fume | 23. novel | 24. excellent |
| 25. favourite | 26. improve | 27. explanation |
| 28. incurable | 29. danger | 30. plant |

THE WORLD OF TEENAGERS

Grammar focus: Comparing adjectives



Reading



1. Before reading the text below take two minutes to discuss this opinion with your partner.

- There are many teenagers who care more about music than about education.



2. Now read some recent information about British and Georgian teenagers. Read both texts, and try to guess what the underlined words mean. Then do the tasks below.

In Britain

According to a recent survey of opinions, adults in Britain like to say that teenagers are lazy, irresponsible and rude. But, in fact, British teenagers now probably work hard at school, respect their parents and plan for their future. The survey showed that teenagers work much harder than they did 10 years ago. Many British teenagers say that they even like school! Adam, aged 15, says, "I like school. I like meeting up with friends and I like to improve my knowledge too". British teenagers think a lot about the future. 57% worry about getting a job when they finish their studies. Some teenagers, when they reach the age of fourteen, have jobs, like web designing and baby-sitting.

The survey also showed that there are many teenagers who care more about music than about education. Music is the most important thing in many British teenagers' lives. As well as music, popular activities with teenagers are sports, computer games, cinema, shopping, watching videos and watching TV. Teenagers watch TV less than they did ten years ago but some still watch it a lot. They like music and sports programmes best.



In Georgia

Adults like to say that teenagers are lazy, irresponsible and rude. But, in fact, Georgian teenagers now think more about their future than they did ten years ago. Many Georgian teenagers now realize that knowing foreign languages, especially English, and developing computer skills are essential for their future career. But this is not true for all teenagers. Many Georgian teenagers spend much of their time watching TV, playing computer games, or just hanging out in the street or in the yard with their friends and neighbours. In Georgia, you can work when you are sixteen and many teenagers would like to work part-time to earn a little money. But often their parents won't let them have any kind of job. They say that

their children should study first. Sophie, who is 16, says: "I told my mum I wanted to work as a waitress in a café, and do you know what she said? She said: You? A waitress? Well, that's OK."

There are many teenagers who care about music more than about education. Many of them have a good ear for music, and they can play the piano, and sing and dance well. A recent survey showed that Georgian teenagers sit in front of their computers more and read books much less than they did 10 or 15 years ago.

3. Read the sentences below and say who they refer to: teenagers in Britain, teenagers in Georgia or both?

| | Georgian | British | Both |
|---|----------|---------|------|
| 1. Adults agree that they are lazy and rude. | | | ✓ |
| 2. They work hard at school. | | | |
| 3. They now think more about their future. | | | |
| 4. They plan for their future. | | | |
| 5. Many of them like music more than school. | | | |
| 6. Many of them meet their friends in the yard. | | | |
| 7. They like sports and music programmes. | | | |
| 8. Many of them worry about their future jobs. | | | |
| 9. Many of them play a musical instrument. | | | |

4. Read the texts again. Then write down short answers to the questions below.

- At what age do many British teenagers have jobs? At the age of 14.
- At what age can you start work in Georgia?
- What percentage of British teenagers think about getting a job?
- What kind of job would Sophie like to have?
- Do teenagers in Britain watch TV more than they did 10 years ago?
- Do teenagers in Georgia read less than they did 10 years ago?
- What jobs do British teenagers mostly have?

Vocabulary in Context

5. For each Georgian word given below, find an underlined word in the text to match it. Words are arranged in the same order as in the texts.

- a. უპასუხისმგებლო irresponsible b. პატივისცემა c. გაუმჯობესება
d. მოზრდილი ადამიანი e. უხეში f. მიმტანი ქალი

6. The phrases given below are from the text. Complete each sentence with the right phrase. One phrase is extra and there is one example given.

baby-sitting
ear for music
foreign languages
future career
paper rounds
a recent survey
works part-time

- In the past in Britain and USA many teenagers earned money by delivering newspapers. This was called paper rounds.
- My cousin has an exceptional talent in music. He can play several types of musical instrument. He has a very good _____.
- When my mother was seventeen she earned money by looking after a child for a short time when the child's parents were away. She liked _____.
- Nowadays many teenagers think about their jobs and how much they will earn when they grow up. They really worry about their _____.
- _____ has shown that the word 'mum' is the most used word in English.
- Nick works as a salesman in a flower shop. He works only three days a week. He _____

7. Complete the sentences with the words in the box. Two words are extra.

There is an expression a "typical teenager". This is usually said by adults (1) to mean that teenagers are lazy and _____ (2) to their parents. But this is not always true. An American teenager Kenny, who is 15, says that he gets on well with his parents and that he _____ (3) them a lot. Kenny works hard at school. He says that he likes learning and _____ (4) his knowledge. He also thinks that education is important for his future _____ (5) and that it will help him to get a good _____ (6) when he finishes his studies.

~~adults~~
care
career
job
recent
rude
respects
improving



8. You are going to hear Robert, Giorgi and Katie talking about how they spend their free time. Say the appropriate answer. Note that Robert does four things, Giorgi - two and Katie - three.

| | listens to music | watches movies | studies | is at a friend's house | does sport |
|--------|------------------|----------------|---------|------------------------|------------|
| Robert | | V | | | |
| Giorgi | | | | | |
| Katie | | | | | |



9. Listen to the three people again and complete the sentences with the words that you hear. You may need 1 or 2 words for each gap.

Robert's favourite films are comedies and science fiction (1). Robert neither drinks nor _____ (2). Robert goes to the _____ (3) twice a week.

Giorgi's favourite music is _____ (4). Giorgi and his friend like listening to _____ (5) kind of music.

Katie is preparing for the university _____ (6) exams. Katie never goes to the _____ (7).

Grammar: Comparing adjectives

Look at the sentences:

- Teenagers work harder than they did 10 years ago.
 - Planes are more expensive than trains.
- harder* and *more expensive* are comparative forms of *hard* and *expensive*.

We use comparative forms of adjectives when we want to compare one thing to another. After comparatives you can use "than":

Now look at these sentences:

- This is the fastest car in the world.
 - Music is the most important thing in many teenagers' lives.
- fastest* and *most important* are superlative forms of the adjectives *fast* and *important*.

We use superlative forms of adjectives to compare three or more things and it means more than the others. We mostly use **the** before a superlative: *the longest, the most boring*.

Other examples are: *nice-nicer-the nicest; happy-happier-the happiest; interesting -more interesting- the most interesting; important- more important- the most important*.

Can you write two rules for making the comparative and superlative forms of adjectives? Can you remember the adjectives which do not follow these rules? Your friends and your teacher will help you.



10. Put these adjectives into 3 groups according to how they form the comparative and superlative forms. Some adjectives may go into groups 1 and 2.

short perfect expensive cheap much serious little
careful quiet heavy exciting bad happy good

Group 1: (adjective +er/est): short

Group 2: (more/most+adjective)

Group 3: irregular

11. Complete the sentences. Use comparative or superlative forms.

1. He is the m o s t f a m o u s (famous) person I've ever met.
2. I'm surprised Diana is only fourteen. I thought she was _____ (old).
3. Since Dima started to read English books, his English has got much _____ (good).
4. My younger brother is much _____ (serious) than you think he is.
5. It was a very happy day. It was the _____ (happy) day of my life.
6. She is the _____ (tall) player in the team.
7. This is _____ (bad) place I've ever been to.
8. This town is _____ (little) polluted than that one.

12. Sandro is an exchange student in America. This is what he wrote to his parents in Georgia. Read his letter and complete the sentences with comparative or superlative forms of the adjectives.

Dear Mum and Dad,,

Sorry I haven't written till now. I am enjoying being here very much. My school is about 20 minutes' drive from my house. They say it's the biggest (1) (big) and _____ (2) (good) school in the district and I think this is probably true. What I like most is the school playground. I spend _____ (3) (much) of my free time there. It's about three times _____ (4) (big) than our school playground in Kutaisi, and it's much _____ (5) (well-equipped). I really love the ice-creams here. They are much _____ (6) (delicious) than the ones we have at home. I spend nearly all my money on ice-creams. As for food, it's more expensive and _____ (7) (little) tasty than I expected. I still think that nothing can be _____ (8) (good) than Imeruli Khachapuri...

Will write again soon.

Love

Sandro

Action-oriented task: Write a report



Speaking

13.

In small groups, decide on your answers to these questions. Then tell the rest of the class what you think. Which answers do you agree on?

What do you think...

1. Which social network site:

- is the most and least popular among teenagers?
- do you use most often? Why?

3. Which TV programme:

- do people in your family like the most?
- do you think is the least interesting?
- has the best journalists?

2. Which Georgian and foreign pop singers or pop groups:

- do we see the most often on TV?
- are the most popular among teenagers?
- do you and your friends love the most?

4. Which radio channel:

- plays the best music?
- plays the worst music?
- is listened to by the biggest number of people?

14.

Read these four opinions. Then choose ONE of them and ask what others in your group think about it. Report the results to the whole class.

- At the age of sixteen children should be free to do what they like.
- For a girl it's normal to serve in the army.
- Teenagers should be allowed to drive a car.
- Children under 16 should be at home before 10 o'clock.



Now get ready to write

15. Write 4 or 5 sentences about the opinion you chose. Start with:

I discussed the statement: "....." with my friends. Dato thinks that... but Eka doesn't agree. She thinks that....

COMPUTERS AT HOME

Grammar focus: Present Perfect



 Reading


1. Spend 2 minutes discussing these questions with a partner.

- Do you have your own computer?
- How often do you use it?



2. Now read what these six people think about computers, and try to guess the meaning of the words underlined. Decide who is FOR, and who is AGAINST computers. Choose the appropriate name.

| | Alex | Maya | Ani | Kote | Nata | Irakli |
|-------------------|------|------|-----|------|------|--------|
| for computers | V | | | | | |
| against computers | | | | | | |

Alex

Computers are great. They are better than TV. On TV you can watch a spaceship, but in a computer game you can fly a spaceship.

Maya

When children play with computers, they learn to understand them. Computers are going to be very important in the future. Computers have helped us to improve the quality of life. So I think children should play with them and learn about them.

Ani

A lot of my friends play computer games all the time. They can't stop. They don't talk to anyone. They just sit and look at the computer screen for hours and hours. Many of them have become computer addicts. And they are so bad for your eyes. It's awful. I'm not a computer user myself.

Kote

The Internet is very useful. There is more information on the Internet than in the Bodleian Library, in Oxford, which is enormous. I like searching for information on the Internet. You can find any information you want. And you can even find a girlfriend if you log on to a chat room. So there are online romances! The Internet has changed my life!!!

Nata

I've got friends all over the world. I've never actually seen any of them, but I know them well because we chat and send emails to each other. All you need to know is a little English and the door to the world is open! I find all this very exciting.

Irakli

I think that many of today's computer games are very harmful for young people. There's too much shooting and killing. These games are worse than horror films. When you watch TV you see bad things, but when you play computer games you do bad things. Computers teach violence and they can't be good for you.



3. Read the texts again and find the correct person for each sentence.

Who speaks about...

1. online romances on the Internet? K o t e
2. flying a spaceship?
3. violence in computer games?
4. computers being bad for your eyesight?
5. having many online friends?
6. computers making life better in the future?
7. spending a long time on computers being a bad habit?

Vocabulary in Context

4. In the texts above, find the English equivalents for these words and expressions.

1. უზარმაზარი enormous 2. ძებნა
3. ძალადობა 4. კომპიუტერის მომხმარებელი
5. ელექტრონული ფოსტა 6. ამაღლებელი, ძალიან საინტერესო
7. კომპიუტერით ზედმეტად გატაცებული

5. Match the words under A with the words under B and write eight phrases in your notebooks. For example: horror + films. In some cases there is more than one ending.

A

| | |
|---------------|-------------|
| 1. horror | 5. online |
| 2. quality | 6. computer |
| 3. search for | 7. chat |
| 4. send | 8. bad for |

B

| | |
|-------------|----------------|
| a. addict | e. films |
| b. romances | f. email |
| c. eyesight | g. information |
| d. of life | h. rooms |

6. Read the text about a personal computer and complete the sentences with the words from the box. There are two extra words.

Just a small machine

A personal computer is a small machine used for different (1) purposes. But teenagers like computers mostly for games. Today, most computer _____ (2) are played online. Many of the computer games can be really _____ (3).

Access to the Internet is another exciting advantage of _____ (4) computers. As the Internet covers _____ (5) countries and works faster, more people are beginning to play against other computer _____ (6), not just by themselves. And lots of young people use the Internet to _____ (7) with each other.

Personal computers have helped people in many _____ (8). The Internet has done more. It has opened the doors to most of the world's _____ (9).

- games
- ~~different~~
- chat
- computer
- exciting
- information
- online
- more
- users
- ways
- using

➡ **Listening**

7. Gigi is 16. He was interviewed for a teenage magazine. Listen to the interview and write the phrases you hear. You will hear only 5 of these 7 phrases.

- | | | |
|-------------------|--------------------|--------------------------|
| certain hours | after school | before school |
| one of my friends | three times a week | every week it's not good |

8. Listen to the interview again and decide whether these statements about Gigi are true or not. Write Yes or No for each sentence.

1. Gigi has a computer at home. No
2. He can only go to the Internet café at fixed times.
3. One hour in the Internet café costs two Lari.
4. He only chats with his friends.
5. He goes to the Internet café three times a week.
6. He and his friends like the same computer game.
7. His mother wants him to spend more time at a computer.



Grammar: Present Perfect

Look at the sentences:

- Personal computers have helped people in many ways.
 - The Internet has opened the doors to most of the world's information.
- have helped and has opened are Present Perfect of the verbs: help and open.*

We use Present Perfect for actions which began in the past but have a result NOW. So there is always a connection with the present. When there is no connection with NOW and we want to speak about something which finished in the PAST, we use Past Simple. Compare:

- The Internet has changed our lives (Our lives are different NOW)
- They invented a computer in the 60-ies. (no connection with NOW)

We use Present Perfect with the words: *never, just, already, since, for*. Yet is very common in questions and negative forms.

- I have never used the Internet.
- He's just moved to New York.
- Have you met him yet?

Now look at the question and negative forms.

- He hasn't seen this film.
- Have you ever written a poem?

Can you make the rule for forming the Present Perfect: its affirmative, negative and interrogative forms?

Ask your teacher for advice. Remember: *He's just moved = He has just moved; They've been = They have been.*



9. In your notebooks arrange the sentences into two groups: Present Perfect and Past Simple.

- ~~I was 13 then.~~ Has he ever met you? She has always been nice. We didn't enjoy it.
 We've lived here since 2001. I've never played rugby. Were you there?
 We grew up with it. Have you ever tasted this?

| Present perfect | Past simple |
|-----------------|----------------|
| | I was 13 then. |
| | |
| | |
| | |



10. Complete the sentences with just, never, already, since, for and yet.

1. I haven't been to Telavi since 2000.
2. Mary is very tired. She's been here _____ four hours already.
3. I don't know this man. I've _____ seen him before.
4. I've been busy and haven't prepared anything _____.
5. I am not hungry. I've _____ had lunch.
6. Are you ready? Not _____.
7. I've known John _____ we were at school.

11. Read Eliza's letter to her aunt. Complete the sentences using either the Present Perfect or the Past Simple form of the verbs in brackets.



Dear Aunt Polly,

We are all well. Jim (1) has finished (finish) doing a computer course and Mary (2) _____ (already/ take) her maths exam. I am much freer now than I (3) _____ (be) last month. I even found time to go to the cinema yesterday. I (4) _____ (see) a new American film. I (5) _____ (not /like) it. It (6) _____ (have) too much violence in it. After the film we (7) _____ (drive) to Ani's house. Ani is a new friend of mine who (8) _____ (just/arrive) from Georgia and who (9) _____ (decide) to spend a year in our town as an exchange student.

I look different now from when you last saw me. Last month, I (10) _____ (lose) 5 kilos. So I'm much slimmer and I think I look really cool. See my photo??

I have to go now. Dad (11) _____ (just / wake up) and I have to cook his breakfast.

Love,
Eliza

Action-oriented task: Have a class debate



Speaking

12.

Some people say that it's a good thing to have a computer at home. But some people say that a computer at home makes you a computer addict and can waste a lot of your time. What do YOU think? Think of at least 2 arguments FOR and AGAINST having a computer at home. Work in small groups. Tell your friends about your arguments and listen to theirs. Are their arguments different from yours?



Now get ready to write

13. Write about the advantages of having a computer at home. Why is it good to have a computer at home? Can you give any facts or arguments to defend your opinion?

Start with:

- I think it's very good to have a computer at home because.....

Use some of these words and phrases: chat / the Internet / websites / useful / advantage / search for information / send an email / computer user / computer addict

Write between 60-80 words.

MERRY CHRISTMAS!

Grammar focus: Present Continuous



Reading



1. Take two minutes to discuss these questions with your partner.

- How do you celebrate Christmas? Do you do anything special on this day?



2. At Christmas time teenagers from all over the world send letters and emails to Santa Claus. Read the extracts. What are the two most interesting things you learnt about Christmas?



Merry Christmas!

Hello Santa! I am Jim from England. Christmas in my country began in 596 AD, when St Augustine landed on England. He was with a number of Christian monks and they wanted to bring Christianity to Britain. One thing we, the English enjoy especially is the beautiful music which can only be heard at Christmas time. We also love to decorate our homes with Christmas trees and dark-green branches from the holly tree. In England the day after Christmas is Boxing Day, so called because boys used to carry boxes from house to house to collect money. In England, we usually have our special Christmas dinner at lunch-time on December 25, which of course is Christmas Day.

გილოცავთ შობას!

I am Irakli from Georgia. We always celebrate Christmas on 7th of January. It's my favourite yearly festival. In our house, as in most Georgian homes, you can find a big Christmas tree on Christmas Eve. On that day my family and I always do some Christmas shopping. On Christmas day we have lots of guests because all our friends and relatives come to see us. The traditional Georgian food at Christmas is satsivi, which is pieces of turkey cooked in a walnut sauce. And for those who like sweet things, there is also gozinaki, which is made of nuts and honey.

Froehliche Weihnachten!

Hi! My name is Hans and I'm from Germany. At Christmas we like to hang up wreaths made of holly. Each wreath has four red candles in the center. On each of the three Sundays before Christmas, we light one of the candles, and we light the last one on Christmas Eve. I specially like the gingerbread cookies that my Mum makes. Last Christmas, we went from house to house and sang all our favourite Christmas carols, like Silent Night. In this way, we collected quite a lot of money, which we donated to an organization which helps poor people.

Feliz Navidad!

Hello Santa Claus! I am Jose from Spain. In Spain, Christmas is a very festive time. On Christmas Eve, when it gets dark and when the stars come out, in every house people light tiny oil lamps. Then, after the midnight service in church and after Christmas dinner, streets begin to fill with dancers and 'spectators'. People in the streets dance a very old Christmas dance called the jota. The music for the jota is hundreds of years old, and it is played on guitars and castanets. A traditional Spanish Christmas treat is turrón, which is a kind of candy made from almonds.

Shinnen omedeto. Kurisumasu Omedeto!

I am Ayako and I live in Japan. Most people in Japan are not Christians. Only about 1% of the Japanese believe in Christ. But most people here like to decorate their shops and their homes with green leaves and branches during Christmas. For the Japanese, Christmas is not a special day for the family. They don't have turkey or plum pudding, or any of the food that Christians like for Christmas. But it is special in another way, because we usually spend the day doing kind things for others, especially those who are sick in hospital.

3. Which country... Read the extracts again. Choose and say the appropriate answer.

| Which country... | England | Georgia | Germany | Spain | Japan |
|--|---------|---------|---------|-------|-------|
| 1. has a traditional Christmas sweet made of honey and nuts? | | ✓ | | | |
| 2. has Christmas dinner at midday? | | | | | |
| 3. has a special Christmas dance? | | | | | |
| 4. collects money to help the poor? | | | | | |
| 5. has a small number of Christians? | | | | | |
| 6. has a tradition to light four candles? | | | | | |

Vocabulary in Context

4. Read the words and phrases below and find their English equivalents in the texts. Write the English equivalents in your notebooks.

- | | | |
|-------------------------------|---------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. სადღესასწაულო პერიოდი | <u>festive time</u> | 2. ბაძვის გვირგვინი |
| 3. საშობაო გემრიელი საჭმელები | | 4. ნუშის ტკბილეული |
| | 5. ფულის შეგროვება | |
| 6. შობის წინა დღე | | 7. ნიგვზის სოუსი/ბაჟე |

5. Match the underlined words and expressions with their Georgian equivalents. The context in which they are used will help you.

- | | |
|---|--------------------------|
| 1. Christmas in my country began in 596 <u>AD</u> . | a. შესანიერი/შენიერულობა |
| 2. Christian <u>monk</u> | b. საშობაო ვაჭრობა |
| 3. Collect money for <u>donations</u> | c. ბერი |
| 4. Streets begin to fill with dancers and <u>spectators</u> . | d. მაყურებლები |
| 5. <u>Christmas shopping</u> | e. ჩვენი წელთაღრიცხვით |

6. New Year has been celebrated for thousands of years. Read the texts about some New Year festivals from the past and present and complete the sentences in your notebooks with the words from the box. One word is extra.

Celebrating the New Year

The Ancient Egyptian New Year. In Ancient Egypt, New Year was celebrated (1) in September. Festivities took _____ (2) along the river Nile. There was always a procession which was led by the Pharaoh. Trumpets and drums were played in front of crowds of _____ (3).

The Roman New Year. During Roman times, a new calendar was invented and the New Year, which had been in March, was _____ (4) to January. People gave gifts to their friends and even to the Emperor. They also gave money for _____ (5). And they used to go to parties _____ (6) funny costumes.

The modern Hindu New Year. Many Hindus celebrate New Year in October, at the same time as Diwali, the festival of light. On the day of Diwali, people all over India light little _____ (7) called divas, and put them on tiny paper boats which then float on lakes and ponds.

celebrated
donation
dance
place
lamps
moved
spectators
wearing

➔  Listening

7. You are going to listen to a song 'Jingle Bell Rock'. Before you listen, look at the words below and match those from groups A and B which rhyme. For example: 1- b: swing – ring. Then listen to the song and check how many words you guessed correctly.

A

| | |
|-----------|---------|
| 1. swing | 4. rock |
| 2. chime | 5. away |
| 3. square | 6. fun |

B

| | |
|----------|-----------|
| a. air | d. begun |
| b. ring | e. time |
| c. clock | f. sleigh |

Jingle Bell Rock

Jingle bell, jingle bell, jingle bell r o c k (1)
 Jingle bells swing and jingle bells _____ (2)
 Snowing and blowing up bushels of fun
 Now the jingle hop has _____ (3)

Jingle bell, jingle bell, jingle bell rock
 Jingle bells chime in jingle bell _____ (4)
 Dancing and prancing in Jingle Bell square



In the frosty _____ (5).
 What a bright time, it's the right time
 To rock the night away
 Jingle bell time is a swell _____ (6)
 To go gliding on a one-horse sleigh
 Giddy-up jingle horse, pick up your feet
 Jingle around the _____ (7)

Mix and a-mingle in the jingling feet
 That's the jingle bell,
 That's the jingle bell,
 That's the jingle bell _____ (8)

Grammar: Present Continuous

Look at the sentences:

- We are decorating the house for Christmas.
- They are singing their favourite Christmas carol.

are decorating and are singing are Present Continuous of the verbs decorate and sing.

We use Present Continuous to talk about an action which began before the time of speaking, is continuing now, and is not yet finished. It is often used with time adverbs *now*, *at the moment*.

- *I am decorating a Christmas tree now.*

Present Continuous can also be used when we talk about an action that lasts for a short period.

- *I am looking after Nick's dog while he is away on holiday.*

Remember! Some verbs are not used in the continuous form. They are: be / believe / depend / hear / hurt / know / like / love / see / wish.

Look at the example sentences again. Do you remember the rule for affirmative, negative and interrogative forms of Present Continuous? Ask your teacher and your friends for help.

8. Say the affirmative, interrogative and negative forms of the sentences below.

| Affirmative | Interrogative | Negative |
|------------------------|------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. Dad is watching TV. | Is Dad watching TV? | Dad isn't watching TV. |
| 2. | | Jane isn't listening to jazz. |
| 3. | Are you sending an email? | |
| 4. They are dancing. | | |
| 5. | Are they acting in the show? | |
| 6. | | Mari isn't sleeping. |

9. Put the verbs in brackets in Present Continuous. The first one has been done for you.

Merry Christmas and a Happy New Year!

It is the middle of December. Most families (1) are buying (buy) Christmas trees and they (2) ____ (put) colourful decorations inside the house. They (3) ____ (send) cards to friends and family. On the cards are the words: 'Merry Christmas and a Happy New Year' or 'Season's Greetings'. Shopkeepers (4) ____ (decorate) their shops with lights and decorations. Shops (5) ____ (get) very busy and staying open later. In the street, musicians (6) ____ (sing) Christmas songs.

Action-oriented task: Write an email



Speaking

Look at the pictures

of New Year in two different countries: England and Australia, and try to answer these questions: What's happening in the pictures? What are the people wearing and what are they doing? How do the countries differ? What are, or might be, similarities when celebrating New Year? Where would you like to spend New Year and why? Share your ideas with the whole class.



Now get ready to write

11. Write a description of how New Year is celebrated in your country and, in your family. If you have an email address, send your description to Santa Claus: santaletters@holiday.org. Use the letters to Santa Claus in ex.2 as a model. These questions will also help you.

- When do you start New Year preparations?
- Do you stay up very late on the 31st of December to welcome the New Year in?
- Do you decorate the house and, if so, what do you decorate it with?
- Do you yourself decorate the New Year tree or someone else does it for you?
- Do you buy New Year presents? What is the most memorable present you've ever had?
- Have you ever been a first footer (მეკვლე).

Use some of the words and phrases below.

Festive time / New Year tree/ decorate / decorations / walnut sauce / nuts and honey /Christmas treat ...



Reading



1. Take two minutes to ask these questions to your partner. Answer the questions yourself.

- Do you buy special gifts for your family members for Christmas or New Year?
- What was the most memorable Christmas gift you've given to the people you love?



2. Now read the story called *The gift of the Magi** by O. Henry, an American short-story writer. Try to guess the meaning of the underlined words from the context.

The gift of the Magi

One dollar and eighty-seven cents. That was all. Della counted her money three times. And the next day would be Christmas. She stood by the window and looked out with no interest. Tomorrow would be Christmas Day and she had only one dollar eighty-seven with which to buy Jim a gift. Suddenly she left the window and went over to the mirror. She looked at her hair, tied on top of her head. Quickly she pulled it down and let it fall to its complete length. Jim and Della Young were very proud of two things which they owned. One thing was Jim's gold watch. It had once belonged to his father, and before that it had belonged to his father's father. The other thing was Della's long beautiful hair.



Della looked at her hair in the mirror and then she quickly put on her old brown coat and a hat. With a bright light in her eyes, she walked quickly out of her room, down the stairs, and out into the street. Next to the door where she stopped, there was a sign which said: "Mrs. Sofronie. Hair Articles of all Kinds." Della went inside and up the stairs to the second floor where she stopped to get her breath. "Will you buy my hair?" asked Della. "Take your hat off and let me look at it." Della took off her hat. "Twenty dollars," said Mrs. Sofronie, lifting the hair to feel its weight. "Give it to me quick," said Della.

The next two hours went so fast they seemed to fly. She was going from one shop to another, to find a gift for Jim. At last she found one. It surely had been made for Jim and no one else. There was no other like it in any of the shops.... It was a gold watch chain, very simply made. Because it was so simple, you could see that it was very valuable. She paid twenty-one dollars for it. And then she hurried home with the chain and eighty-seven cents. At seven o'clock Jim's dinner was ready for him. Soon she heard his foot-steps in the hall. The door opened and Jim walked in.

He looked at her with a strange expression on his face. "You've cut off your hair?" asked Jim slowly. "My hair will grow again. I had my hair cut off and sold it. I couldn't live through Christmas without giving you a gift. It's Christmas, Jim. Let's be happy. You don't know what a beautiful nice gift I bought for you," said Della. Jim took something tied in paper from inside his coat. "If you open this, you may know what I felt when I came in." White fingers pulled off the paper. Inside the paper, there were three combs. They were the combs that Della had seen in a shop window and had loved for a long time: beautiful combs, with jewels, perfect for her beautiful hair. Now they were hers, but her hair was gone. And then she showed Jim her gift. Jim looked at it, sat down and smiled. "Della," he said, "let's put our Christmas gifts away and keep them for a while. I sold the watch to get the money to buy the combs for you!"

The Magi, as you know, were three wise men who brought gifts to the baby Jesus Christ. They were the first to give Christmas gifts. And here I have told you the story of two young people. Each sold the most valuable thing he owned in order to buy a gift for the other. But let me say this: Of all the people who give gifts, these two were the most wise. These two are the Magi.

* The Magi /'meɪdʒaɪ/ – მთავგებო

3. Read the text again and write short answers in your notebooks.

1. What were the two things Jim and Della were so proud of? Della's hair and Jim's gold watch.
2. How much did Mrs. Safronie pay Della for her hair?
3. What did Della buy for Jim?
4. How much was the gold watch chain?
5. What did Della get for Christmas?
6. Where had Della seen the beautiful combs before?
7. Why did they sell the most valuable thing they had?

4. Here is a summary of the story. But the sentences are in the wrong order. Read the text again and make a logical summary by putting the sentences in their correct order. Begin the summary with sentence g.

- a. Della looked for a present for Jim.
- b. Della sold her hair.
- c. Della had a wonderful idea.
- d. Jim and Dell had to put their beautiful Christmas presents away and keep them for a while.
- e. Della showed Jim her present, but Jim couldn't use it because he had sold his watch.
- f. Della bought a gold watch chain for Jim.
- ~~g.~~ Della had no money to buy Jim a Christmas present.
- h. Jim showed Della his present, but she couldn't use it as she had sold her hair to buy Jim the present.
- i. Jim came home.

Vocabulary in Context

5. Read the words and phrases below and find their English equivalents in the texts. Write the answers in your notebooks.

- | | | |
|--------------------------|-----------------------------|-------------|
| 1. ფლობდა - <u>owned</u> | 2. საჩუქარი | 3. ძვირფასი |
| 4. სახის გამომეტყველება | 5. თმის სამაგრი, სავარცხელი | |
| 6. ძვირფასი ქვა | 7. მოგვები | 8. ბრძენი |

6. Complete the sentences in your notebooks with the words from the box. There is one extra word.

1. He was very proud of the library that he owned.
2. She kept her hair back with two beautiful _____.
3. The queen wore a crown decorated with beautiful _____.
4. I have to buy my sister a _____ for her birthday.
5. Everybody asks him for advice because he is very _____.
6. He has a _____ collection of paintings.
7. She had a sad _____ on her face.

combs
expression
gift
jewels
owned
the Magi
valuable
wise

7. Read the text to find out what Christmas gifts Marika bought for her family. Then complete the text with the words from the box. There are two extra words.

Christmas
combs
expression
fly
~~gifts~~
jewels
owned
valuable
wise

Marika's Christmas gifts

It was Christmas Eve. Marika went shopping to buy her family Christmas gifts (1). She wanted to buy something special for her parents and her little sister. All the shops in the town were full of people who were busy doing Christmas shopping. She went from one shop to another looking for presents. Time went by so fast that it seemed to _____ (2). At last she found what she was looking for. She bought a beautiful bracelet with _____ (3) for her mother and a tie made of _____ (4) silk material for her father. For her little sister she chose two wonderful _____ (5). Marika thought they would look good on her sister's beautiful brown hair. She came back home with a happy _____ (6) on her face. Then she unpacked her bag and put all her presents under the _____ (7) tree.

➔  | Listening

8. You are going to listen to a song about Christmas. Read it first and try to guess the words which might go in the gaps. Then listen to the recording and check how many words you guessed correctly.

White Christmas

I'm dreaming of a white Christmas
Just like the ones I used to know
Where the treetops glisten*
and children _____ (1)
To hear sleigh bells in the _____ (2).

I'm dreaming of a white _____ (3)
With every Christmas _____ (4) I write.
May your days be merry and bright
And may all your Christmases be _____ (5)

I'm dreaming of a _____ (6) Christmas
With every Christmas card I _____ (7)
May your days be merry and _____ (8)
And may all your Christmases be _____ (9).

*treetops glisten – ხეების წვეროები ელვარებს

Grammar: Past Continuous

Look at the sentences:

- *I was watching the Christmas show at 12 o'clock last night.*
 - *They were buying gifts for their friends when I saw them.*
- was watching and were buying are Past Continuous forms of the verbs: watch and buy.*

We use Past Continuous for an action or situation that was in progress at a particular time in the past.

When or while are often used with the Past Continuous.

- *I met her when we were studying at school. (when = during the time)*
- *I found my pen while I was looking for my bag.*
- *Were you having lunch when Dato phoned?*
- *They were not discussing this question when I entered.*

Look at the sentences again and in pairs try to form rules for the affirmative, negative and interrogative forms of the Past Continuous. Ask your teacher for advice.

Remember: both Past Continuous and Past Simple are used for an action in the past. The difference is that Past Continuous is used for an **action in progress**, while Past Simple is used for a **completed action**. Can you make sentences using both Past Simple and Past Continuous? Can you explain the difference between them? Again ask your teacher or your friends for advice.

9. Out of the eight sentences given below, only five are in the Past Continuous. Find them and write them in your notebooks.

1. Everyone was waiting for the concert to begin.
2. What did you eat at the Chinese restaurant?
3. Zura was driving home when his car broke down.
4. Kate wanted a quiet holiday, so she stayed on a small island.
5. What were you doing when I phoned you last night?
6. Maya was cooking, while Giorgi was playing computer games.
7. When Tina woke up, we told her the news.
8. I was washing the dishes when I broke a cup.

10. Write down what the family were doing on Christmas Eve when Nick came home. Complete the sentences using the verbs from the box in the Past Continuous.

When Nick came home:

- Tina and Kate were decorating the Christmas tree.
- Anna _____ a Christmas carol.
- Mother _____ Christmas dinner.
- Father _____ Christmas cards.
- Sally _____ to some music.
- Grandma and Grandpa _____ television.
- Little Johnny _____ Christmas presents.

cook
dance
~~decorate~~
open
sing
watch
read

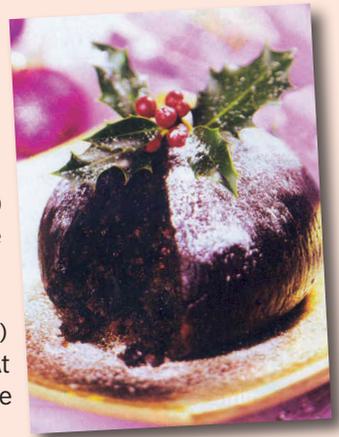
11. It was 7 o'clock in the evening when the first guests arrived at the Walkers' house for Christmas dinner. What were the Walkers doing then? Put the verbs in brackets in the Past Continuous.

Yesterday, at 7 o'clock in the evening:

Mr. Walker (1) _____ (sit) in the armchair in the sitting room and (2) _____ (watch) the Christmas show on TV. It was very warm and cosy and he was nearly asleep when suddenly the door bell rang.

Mrs Walker (3) _____ (cook) Christmas pudding in the kitchen. At the same time she (4) _____ (prepare) a special drink made of fruits and champagne for the guests. Suddenly she heard the bell ring.

Sally, their daughter, had just finished wrapping the presents and now she (5) _____ (put) them under the Christmas tree which (6) _____ (stand) in the corner near the fireplace. At the same time, she (7) _____ (enjoy) her favourite music through the earphones which she (8) _____ (wear). So she didn't hear the doorbell.



Action-oriented task: Write a description



Speaking

12.

Work in pairs. Think of the best present you have ever received. Tell your friend about it. These questions will help you: When did you get it? Was it for some special occasion? Who did you get it from? Do you still have it? You may use some of these expressions:

It was at Christmas/New Year/my birthday.../ I really enjoyed/ I felt happy when/ It is a very special present because / I love surprises so I/ I'll never forget the day when I ...



Now get ready to write

13. Write about the best present you've ever got. You can use the ideas and phrases from the speaking activity, ex. 12. Write between 60-80 words.

Start with:

The best present I've ever received was...



1. Put the adjectives in the correct form: comparative or superlative.

1. It's much c o l d e r (cold) in Norway than in Georgia.
2. The weather is _____ (bad) today than it was yesterday.
3. This is the _____ (short) way to my school.
4. Your ideas are _____ (modern) than I thought.
5. I spend _____ (little) time on reading books online than I used to.
6. It's _____ (easy) to find a job today than it was several years ago.
7. What is _____ (popular) sport in your country?
8. This unit is much _____ (difficult) than the previous one.
9. Which was _____ (happy) day in your life?
10. This was _____ (bad) holiday I've ever had.
11. You speak English _____ (good) than I thought.
12. Nino is much _____ (smart) than I expected.



2. Put the verbs into the correct form. Use Present Perfect or Present Continuous.

1. I h a v e l i v e d (live) in this town all my life.
2. He _____ (already/write) fifty pages of his new book.
3. I _____ (plant) two cherry trees in my garden. It's my favourite tree.
4. Who _____ (you/wait) for? You look so excited.
5. Try these vegetables. We _____ (grow) them in our garden.
6. Tom is in New York and _____ (stay) in one of the Broadway hotels.
7. The coffee _____ (boil). Can you turn it off?
8. Nobody has seen him for two months. Where _____ (he/be) all this time?
9. I _____ (think) of changing the school.
10. After the illness I _____ (feel) weak but much healthier.
11. My brother _____ (never/read) any Japanese poetry.
12. Mary _____ (just/arrive) from Spain. She speaks fluent Spanish.



3. Put the verbs into the correct form. Use Present Continuous or Past Continuous.

1. This is an examination! Why a r e y o u t a l k i n g (you/talk)?
2. Nick didn't hear what the teacher said because he _____ (not/listen).
3. Why are all these people here? What _____ (happen)?
4. Look out of the window! It _____ (snow).
5. Nana and Natia _____ (dance) when they heard a noise.
6. If you _____ (not/listen) to the radio, I'll turn it off.
7. It is hot today. Why _____ (you/wear) a heavy coat?
8. Tina fell asleep while she _____ (read) a book.
9. What's the matter? Why _____ (Ann/cry)?
10. The television was on but nobody _____ (watch) it.
11. I _____ (look for) Eka; Do you know where she is?
12. What _____ (you/do) this time yesterday?

↓

4. Complete each sentences with the appropriate phrase. One phrase is extra.

belonged to Christmas Eve future career part-time job computer addict
 festive time quality of life recent survey search for major success
 modern technologies online romance wise men

1. Modern technologies help us to achieve more.
2. My brother spends almost all his free time playing computer games. He is a _____.
3. A developed economy always brings a better _____.
4. You can _____ any kind of information on the Internet.
5. A _____ showed the statistics of the increase of the divorced families.
6. Christmas has always been a _____ for Christians.
7. The Magi were three _____ who brought gifts to baby Jesus Christ.
8. My mother works three hours a day. She has a _____.
9. Shops are very busy on _____ and they sell most products then.
10. Knowledge of English and computer are essential for your _____.
11. Through the Internet you acquire online friends or can even have an _____.
12. I love this old blue scarf. It once _____ my grandmother.

↓

5. How many words do you know? In your notebooks write the Georgian translation next to each word. Then check the meaning in the Wordlist at the end of the book. Count the correct answers and write the number. All the words are from units 5-8.

Out of 30 words I know _____.

- | | | |
|----------------------------------|---------------|---------------|
| 1. adult <u>მზრდელი ადამიანი</u> | 2. respect | 3. rude |
| 4. improve | 5. waitress | 6. percentage |
| 7. irresponsible | 8. during | 9. quality |
| 10. search | 11. harmful | 12. important |
| 13. exciting | 14. email | 15. screen |
| 16. spaceship | 17. shoot | 18. violence |
| 19. gift | 20. jewels | 21. wise |
| 22. expression | 23. comb | 24. wreath |
| 25. service | 26. spectator | 27. monk |
| 28. turkey | 29. walnut | 30. almond |

➔  Reading

- ↓
- This advert was put in a youth magazine. Read it and say who it is for.

The advert is for

- a. an actor
- b. a musician
- c. an artist

Advert:

Are you 15-17 years old? Are you talented? Are you an artistic person? Can you play the bass guitar? Have you ever played in a band? If your answer to these questions is YES, you might be just the person we need for a new pop band! Interested? Email to talented@mail.com. Attach your photo.

- ↓
- This is what Pamela, Sandro and Penny wrote in response to this advert. Read what they wrote, and say the correct name after the questions below. In some cases there are two answers.

A. Hi! My name is Pamela Harrison. I'm not a very good singer but I've got a lot of talent and I'm a good piano player. I'm a music student and my ambition is to be a star! I've been playing in a band for six months already and I enjoy it a lot. I'll be 16 next week. I like to wear fashionable things and ...



B. My name is Sandro Meskhi. I'm 15 and I'm already 1m78 tall. So I'm quite tall for my age. I'm quite artistic and music is what I'm most interested in. My favourite instrument is the bass guitar and I've been playing it in my school for a year already. You may also like to know that I'm a member of the drama club at school and..



C. My name is Penny Kerr. I'm 17. I always seek success, so I'm a very ambitious person. I have a really strong desire to play in a pop band. I'm quite artistic and from time to time I sing with a pop group at our college. I've never played the guitar, but I'm sure it wouldn't take me long to learn how to play it.

| Say who... | Pamela | Sandro | Penny |
|--|--------|--------|-------|
| 1. can play the piano. | V | | |
| 2. likes the latest clothes styles. | | | |
| 3. likes drama. | | | |
| 4. can't play the guitar. | | | |
| 5. thinks that music is his/her number one interest. | | | |
| 6. always wants to succeed. | | | |

Vocabulary in Context



3. Match the expressions with their Georgian equivalents. The context in which they are used in the text will help you.

- | | |
|------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. quite artistic | a. წარმატებისკენ სწრაფვა |
| 2. my ambition is... | b. მოდური ტანსაცმელი |
| 3. an ambitious person | c. საკმაოდ არტისტული |
| 4. seek success | d. საყვარელი მუსიკა |
| 5. favourite music | e. ჩემი დიდი მიზანია |
| 6. strong desire | f. ძლიერი სურვილი |
| 7. fashionable clothes | g. მიზანსწაფული პიროვნება |



4. Complete the table below. Then, in your notebooks, make the same table in Georgian.

| | | | | | | |
|-----------|---------|------------|---------|-----------|----------|--------|
| Noun | nature | | fashion | | | desire |
| Adjective | natural | successful | | ambitious | artistic | |



5. Read about Goga's and Tiko's interests and complete the sentences in your notebooks with the words from the box.

Goga:

I am 17 years old. I have a strong _____ (1) to become an actor. Everybody says I am quite _____ (2). I've been a member of a _____ (3) since last year, and I _____ (4) it a lot. I have another _____ (5) as well. I want to play in a pop band. I can play the violin a little and I'm getting better at it. I am quite _____ (6) you see.

- ambitious
- artistic
- enjoy
- artist
- drama club
- desire (2)

- ambitious
- makes travelling
- held ambition
- professional
- fashionable

Tiko:

I've been playing in a _____ (1) orchestra for five years already. I play the flute and I like it a lot. I am not an _____ (2) person but I like the feeling of doing things well. Another thing that _____ (3) me happy is travel, and recently I've been _____ (4) quite a lot. Last month we had a concert in Budapest. The concert was _____ (5) in a modern and very _____ (6) concert hall in one of the central parks...

Listening



6. What do you know about Britney Spears – a famous American singer? Read the statements and TRY to guess whether they are true or not true. Then listen to the recording and see whether you guessed right. Note that only 2 statements are not true.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Britney thinks she is a normal girl. <u>True</u> . | 6. Britney's family lives in California, USA. |
| 2. Britney worries about her appearance. | 7. Britney can write songs and act in films. |
| 3. Britney likes her hair and her teeth. | |
| 4. She wears beautiful clothes. | |
| 5. Britney often goes to other countries. | |



7. Listen to the recording again and write the missing words.

1. Britney's fans think she is perfect.
2. Britney gives a lot of _____ all over the world.
3. Britney's best friend is her _____.
4. Britney writes songs with her _____.
5. In one concert Britney danced with her _____.
6. Britney's family is very _____.



Grammar: Present Perfect Continuous

Look at the sentences:

- *I have been playing the guitar since my childhood.*
 - *She has been singing in this band since last year.*
- have been playing* and *has been singing* are the Present Perfect Continuous of the verbs *play* and *sing*.

We use the Present Perfect Continuous to talk about something that began in the past and is still going on NOW. For example, *I have been watching TV* means I started watching TV in the past and I am still watching it (or have just stopped).

Present Perfect Continuous is more usual with *how long*, *since* and *for*.

- **How long** have you been reading this book?
- I've been reading it **since last week /for one week**.

Some verbs, for example *like*, *know*, *be* are not normally used in the continuous. The Present Perfect is used instead.

- *I've known him for six years.*
- *They've been here for three hours already.*

Can you write a rule for affirmative, negative and interrogative forms of Present Perfect Continuous? Ask your friends or your teacher for help.



8. Read the dialogue and put the verbs in brackets into the Present Perfect Continuous. You can write the answers in your notebooks.

- Hello Nick, what (1) have you been doing (you/do)?
- I (2) _____ (sing) with George.
- Who is George?
- He's my new neighbour. He (3) _____ (live) next door for six months already.
- Why haven't I met him?
- Because every day for the last six months he (4) _____ (leave) home early in the morning, and he (5) _____ (come) back late at night.
- Why (6) _____ (he/do) that?
- Because he (7) _____ (play) the bass guitar in one of the bands and (8) _____ (practise) a lot.
- He sounds interesting. I must meet him one day.



9. In your notebooks write a question to follow each of these statements. Begin each question with *How long....* The words in brackets will help you.

1. Your dad is watching TV. Ask him: (you / watch TV)
How long have you been watching TV?
2. Your brother is chatting on the computer. Ask him: (you/chat)
How long
3. Liza has told you she is a good friend of Sophie's. Ask Liza: (know /Sophie)
How long
4. Your friend's sister is learning Chinese. Ask your friend: (she/learn Chinese)
How long
5. You come home and see that your cousin is there. Ask him: (you/ here)
How long
6. Tiko is playing the violin. Ask her friend, Sally: (Tiko/play)
How long

10. Read the text and put the verbs in brackets into the Present Perfect or Present Perfect Continuous tense.

Mike and Jane arrived in Georgia four years ago and (1) *h a v e b e e n l i v i n g* in Tbilisi since then. They (2) _____ (work) for an American company since they arrived. Mike and Jane (3) _____ (travel) a lot in Georgia. They (4) _____ (be) to Gremi and Tsinandali four times. They also love Vardzia. Jane (5) _____ (be) to Vardzia six times already. Mike and Jane (6) _____ (learn) a lot about the history and the culture of Georgia. The only thing they (7) _____ (not manage) to learn so far is the Georgian language. They say they (8) _____ (try) hard, but they (9) _____ (learn) words like *gamarjoba* and *khachapuri*.

Action-oriented task: Write an advert



Speaking

11.

Work in groups of three or four. Your group has decided to go out for the evening together. Look at these adverts and decide which is the best place for you to go. Then tell the whole class why you made this choice.

**Rustaveli Cinema
Tonight!!!
Lord of the Rings
Performances at 6 and 9 pm
Ticket price: 6 GEL**

Enjoy the latest 3D laser show at Lisi Lake.
Meals are offered from 8 GEL
Entrance 4 GEL
Starts: 7.30

TOGETHER FOR THE FIRST TIME
The best bands in the Caucasus
Doors open from 22:00
Noa Noa Club. 12 Rustaveli Ave
Free Entry

In the Open Air: Turtle Lake
Paparazzi:
The best band for you!
Join in! Start time: 8pm
Ticket price: 5 GEL



Now get ready to write

12. Look at the adverts again and in your notebooks write your own advert for an evening event in your town. Don't forget to write:

- the name of the event
- the place and time of the event
- the ticket price, if it's not free
- any other information you want to give

Advert:

Show your advert to your friends and have a look at theirs.

➔  Reading



1. What do you know about Ernest Hemingway - the famous American writer? Go through the text quickly and do the tasks below. Try to guess the meaning of the underlined words and expressions from the context.

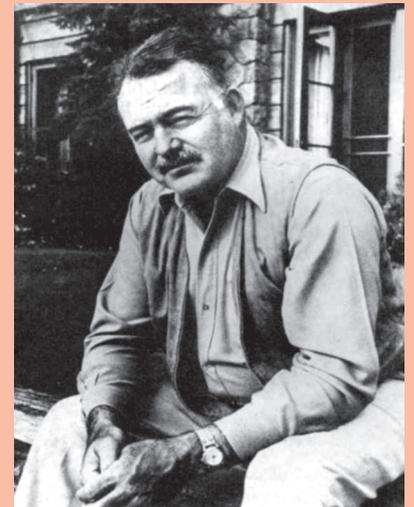
Ernest Hemingway - A Nobel Prize winner

A.

Reporter, soldier, short-story writer, novelist, deep-sea fisherman and a brave hunter, Ernest Hemingway, was born in Oak Parks, a small town in the State of Illinois, USA on July 21, 1899. His parents wanted him to become a doctor, like his father, or a musician, like his mother, but after graduation from high school, Hemingway began his writing career as a sports reporter for the newspaper *Kansas City Star*.

B.

In 1918, when the United States entered World War One, Hemingway left his job as a sports reporter and joined the army. He worked as an ambulance driver with the Red Cross in Italy. He gained valuable life experience from the war and from the hospital in Milan where he had to spend several weeks. Hemingway used this experience later in his novels and short stories. At the time, he was only nineteen years old.



C.

Hemingway's first major success was the publication of his famous novel *The Sun Also Rises* in 1926. This was followed by a collection of short stories in 1927, and then another big novel: *A Farewell to Arms*. At that time Hemingway lived in Florida, USA, but he made many trips to Africa to hunt wild animals. Some of his best short stories, written in the mid-30s, were inspired by what he remembered of this exciting experience.

D.

In 1940 Hemingway moved to Cuba where he would live for the next twenty years. One of the stories that he heard from a Cuban fisherman gave him the idea for his short novel *The Old Man and the Sea*. This is a story about a brave old Cuban fisherman's fight with a "brave" giant fish. It was because of this novel that, in 1954, Ernest Hemingway was awarded the Nobel Prize for Literature.

E.

After he had won the Nobel Prize, Hemingway became a respected writer who was well-known in many countries. Many of his novels and short stories were translated into several other languages, including Georgian. But Hemingway often felt ill and angry with himself and he began to suffer from depression. As a result of this, by 1961 Hemingway was so heavily depressed that he shot himself and died.



2. In which paragraph can you find the information given below? Choose the appropriate answer.

| | A | B | C | D | E |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1. Hemingway went hunting in Africa. | | | V | | |
| 2. He worked as a sports reporter. | | | | | |
| 3. He was given the Nobel Prize for Literature. | | | | | |
| 4. Hemingway was often very unhappy. | | | | | |
| 5. During World War 1, he was in hospital for a long time. | | | | | |
| 6. <i>The Sun Also Rises</i> was Hemingway's first big success. | | | | | |



3. Read the text again and find the answers to the questions below.

1. What was Hemingway's father's profession? He was a doctor.
2. When did Hemingway start his career as a writer?
3. When did the United States start to fight in World War 1?
4. When were his best short stories written?
5. For which novel did he win a Nobel Prize?
6. Where did he live after 1945?

Vocabulary in Context



4. Read the phrases, remember the contexts in which they are used in the text above, and match them with their Georgian equivalents.

- | | |
|--------------------------------|--|
| 1. an ambulance driver | a. ძირითადი წარმატება |
| 2. began his writing career | b. შთაგონებული იყო |
| 3. gained life experience | c. ამის შედეგად... .. |
| 4. major success | d. შეიძინა ცხოვრებისეული გამოცდილება |
| 5. as a result of this... | e. დააჯილდოვეს ნობელის პრემიით |
| 6. was awarded the Nobel Prize | f. სასწრაფო დახმარების მანქანის მძღოლი |
| 7. ...was inspired by... | g. დაინყო სამწერლო მოღვაწეობა |



5. Match the words with their definitions. The contexts in which they are used in the text will help you. E.g. 1-c

A

| | |
|--------------|----------|
| 1. career | 4. trip |
| 2. reporter | 5. gain |
| 3. ambulance | 6. major |

B

| |
|--------------------------------|
| a. special car for sick people |
| b. very important |
| c. job, profession |
| d. get |
| e. journey |
| f. journalist |



6. Complete the sentences in your notebooks with the words from the box.

In 1918 when Hemingway was 19 years old, he decided to fight in the First World War, so he went to Italy. There he worked as an (1) ambulance driver. Hemingway used this _____ (2) later in his short stories. In 1945 he wrote his most _____ (3) story: The Old Man and the Sea. For this story he was _____ (4) the Nobel Prize for literature. After he became a Nobel Prize _____ (5) Hemingway became an internationally well-known writer. By then, many of his books had already been _____ (6) into different languages. You can find Georgian translations of many of his novels and short _____ (7) too. For many Georgians Ernest Hemingway is a much loved and highly _____ (8) writer.

- ambulance
- awarded
- experience
- stories
- popular
- respected
- translated
- winner
- writer

➡ | Listening



7. You are going to listen to a text about Alfred Nobel. Before listening, make sure that you understand the words given below. Look them up in the wordlist in the end of the book or ask your friend or your teacher for translation.

- inventor explosive dynamite establish fund outstanding winner

UNIT 10

8. Listen to the text and write the phrases you hear. There are six phrases given and you will hear only five.

- | | |
|---------------------|-------------------|
| the third son | interest in peace |
| invented dynamite | was established |
| an ambulance driver | are awarded |



9. Go through the sentences given below. Then listen to the text again and say the right answer.

- Alfred Nobel was born in
a. Sweden b. Russia c. England
- He became rich by selling a lot of
a. buildings b. explosives c. books
- He wanted his money to be given to people who
a. were very poor b. did important things c. were sick
- Alfred Nobel died in
a. 1869 b. 1819 c. 1896
- The first Nobel Prizes were awarded in
a. 1901 b. 1902 c. 1910
- The value of the prizes at the beginning were
a. \$13 000 b. \$30 000 c. \$400 000
- A person can win a Nobel Prize:
a. only once b. twice c. many times



Nobel Prize

Grammar: Passive forms for Simple tenses

Look at the sentences:

- Hemingway wrote *The Old Man and the Sea*.
- *The Old Man and the Sea* was written by Hemingway.

In the first sentence, the verb is in the active voice (wrote). The second sentence has the verb in the passive voice (was written).

We use an active verb to say what the subject does: *Nobel invented dynamite.*

We use a passive verb to say what happens to the subject: *Dynamite was invented by Nobel.*

Now study the active and passive forms of the Present, Past and Future Simple tenses:

They sell many books every year ----- *Many books are sold every year.*

They sold many books last year ----- *Many books were sold last year.*

They will sell many books next year ----- *Many books will be sold next year.*

Can you write the rule for forming passive forms of the verbs? Can you write the rule for interrogative and negative forms too? Ask your friend or your teacher for advice.

Remember: **We use by only if it is important to say who does the action.**

Who awards the Nobel Prize? The Nobel Prize is awarded by a special committee.

↓
10 Group the verbs below into the Present Simple, Past Simple and Future Simple Passive.

were sold will be sent was awarded will be written are invited is done
was formed will be divided are established is watched

Present Simple Passive:

Past Simple Passive: *were sold*

Future Simple Passive:

↓
11. Read the first sentence. Then complete the second so that it means the same as the first.

- | | |
|---|---|
| <p>1. Our classroom is cleaned every day. <u>We clean our classroom every day.</u></p> <p>2. Dima used this computer for one week. This computer</p> <p>3. The jury awarded him a special prize. He</p> | <p>4. This film will be shown on TV tomorrow. They</p> <p>5. They paid him a lot of money. A lot of money</p> <p>6. I will take the guests to Mtskheta tomorrow. The guests</p> <p>7. Fifteen people were invited to the show. They</p> |
|---|---|

Action-oriented task: Write a paragraph



Speaking

↓
12.

**What do you know
about Nodar Dumbadze, a famous Georgian writer? What
would you like to know about him? Work in small groups. Think of 4 things your group
would like to know. Then walk around the class and ask other groups your questions. Answer their
questions if you can. Collect as much information about Nodar Dumbadze's life and work
as possible.**

E.g. What films have been made after Nodar Dumbadze's novels?

When your small group has found the information you want about Nodar Dumbadze, nominate a SPEAKER to tell the whole class what you have found out. Listen to the speakers from other small groups, and write down at least 3 more interesting pieces of information.



Now get ready to write

↓
13. With the facts that you now have about Nodar Dumbadze, write a paragraph of about 60-70 words under the title "Nodar Dumbadze – a famous Georgian writer".

Use some of these expressions: *after graduation from school / his writing career / major success / were inspired by...*

The following facts might help you.

Place of birth: *Tbilisi, Georgia*

Year of birth: *1928*

Best-known novel: *Me, My Granny, Iliko and Ilarion*

Year of death: *1984*

WHICH TV CHANNEL DO YOU WATCH?

Grammar focus: Modals: must / have to



Reading



1. Take a minute or two to find out from your partner:

- what their favourite TV programme is.
- if they have a favourite TV commercial, and if so, which one.



2. Now read the morning programmes for two TV channels and give short answers to the questions below.



Media TV: 12 November, Thursday

| | |
|-------|----------------------------------|
| 7.00 | Hot Summer: New series |
| 7.45 | Morning News |
| 9.05 | You can do it: children's show |
| 9.35 | News Programme |
| 10.05 | New melodies from Media TV |
| 10.45 | Champions League football |
| 11.10 | Film: Dangerous people |
| 12.05 | One week of history: Documentary |



BBC1: 13 November, Friday

| | |
|-------|----------------------------------|
| 6.00 | Breakfast show |
| 7.10 | The National Lottery Daily Play |
| 7.35 | Animal Park: Children's show |
| 8.30 | News and weather |
| 9.05 | Accidents can happen. New series |
| 10.00 | Regional News |
| 10.30 | Inside out: Documentary |
| 11.15 | Film: The Magic Island |

1. What time does Hot Summer start? *At 7 o'clock.*
2. On which channel can people watch news of their region?
3. Which channel is showing a documentary?
4. When does the children's show start on BBC1?
5. Which TV channel is showing the film: Dangerous people?
6. At what time does Media TV start its morning programmes?



3. Here is some information about the BBC and Media TV. Read the texts and try to understand the underlined words from the context.

BBC

The BBC is the British Broadcasting Corporation. It broadcasts radio and television programmes in the UK and abroad. The BBC is based in London, but has studios in many other parts of the UK and in other countries. The BBC has two television channels: BBC1 and BBC2. BBC2 offers more serious programmes than BBC1 – documentaries and discussions, operas and concerts. BBC1 programmes consist of lighter plays and series, humour and sport, but they also show some interesting documentaries. BBC1 is watched by the biggest number of all viewers. The BBC receives its income from the Government. You will not hear or see any commercials on BBC radio and television because advertising on BBC programmes is prohibited. BBC began its first world's public service in 1936. Now you can read and even watch BBC news through the Internet in 43 different languages.

Learn more about BBC from the website: www.bbcworldservice.com

Media TV

Media TV company was founded in December 2001. It is a private company and it is owned by a group of investors. Media TV is based in Tbilisi, but broadcasts its programmes in every region of Georgia as well as in some other countries of the world. The company has three studios, one for information, one for sports and one for arts programmes. Media TV offers serious programmes but also programmes for entertainment. Their programmes include news, documentaries, discussions, classical and pop music concerts, as well as programmes for children. If you have the Internet, you can also watch Media TV 24 hours a day in any part of the world. Media TV receives its income from advertising: by showing commercials during their programmes.

Learn more about Media TV from the website: www.mediavt.ge

4. Only five of these statements are true according to the information given in the texts. Say which one is the right answer.

| | True | False |
|--|------|-------|
| 1. The Media TV company opened at the end of 2001. | ✓ | |
| 2. The BBC has two TV channels. | | |
| 3. Media TV has three studios. | | |
| 4. BBC 1 offers serious programmes. | | |
| 5. Media TV has children's programmes. | | |
| 6. The BBC is a private company. | | |
| 7. BBC TV channels advertise many products. | | |
| 8. The BBC and Media TV both show discussion programmes. | | |

Vocabulary in Context

5. Read the words below and find their English equivalents in the texts. Write the English equivalents in your notebooks.

- | | | |
|------------------------------------|---------------|------------------------|
| 1. ინტერნეტი - <u>The Internet</u> | 2. არხი | 3. მაყურებლები |
| 4. გასართობი/გართობა | 5. ტრანსლაცია | 6. სერიალი |
| 7. ინვესტორი | | |
| 8. აკრძალულია | 9. შემოსავალი | 10. რეკლამა/განცხადება |

6. Complete the sentences using the words given below. There is one extra word.

advertisements broadcasts channel country income entertainment
prohibited the Internet viewers

- Children as well as adults like entertainment programmes.
- My favourite TV company _____ its programmes in most parts of the country.
- Most private TV companies earn money from _____ or commercials.
- The BBC has millions of _____ on every continent.
- In some TV companies commercials are _____.
- The money that commercial companies receive is called their _____.
- My father likes switching from one _____ to another, but my mother doesn't.
- Nowadays you can watch many TV channels through _____.

7. Go through the texts first. Then complete the sentences in your notebooks with the words from the box. One word is extra.

IBA: Independent Broadcasting Authority

In the UK, the Independent Broadcasting Authority (IBA) is responsible for looking after the regional (1) independent TV companies which _____ (2) their own programmes. These private TV companies _____ (3) money from advertising. In their programmes, there is a break for _____ (4) about every 15-20 minutes. In general, people think that the programmes which are _____ (5) on British television are of a very high standard.

Many TV and radio channels show _____ (6) programmes. They are teaching _____ (7), and thousands of students watch them when they study at home for their university _____ (8).

advertisements
broadcast
channels
degree
educational
earn
regional
private
offered



Listening

8. What's it really like being 15? Ask your partner at least four of these questions and write down their answers.

1. What time do you have to be at home in the evening?
2. What do you do in your free time?
3. What do you like best about being 15?
4. Tell me one thing you worry about.
5. Who do you admire most? Who is your role model?
6. How many hours a day do you spend on your homework?

9. Crown, a magazine for teenagers, asks the same questions to 15-year-old Alex from London, and Fleur from Paris. Listen to the interview and write the phrases you hear. Out of the 7 phrases given you will hear only 5.

all over the world every evening at the weekend play football
worry about admire most a hard job

10. Read this summary of the interview with Alex and Fleur. Then listen to the interview again and complete the text below.

- Alex has to be at home by n i n e (1) o'clock during the week and at _____ (2) o'clock at the weekends. Fleur has to be at home at _____ (3) every day.
- In his free time Alex _____, _____ and _____ (4). In her free time Fleur _____, _____ and _____ (5).
- Alex is happy to be 15 because he likes _____ (6). Fleur likes _____ (7).
- Alex worries about his _____ (8) and Fleur worries about her _____ (9).
- Alex's heroes are _____ and _____ (10) and Fleur's hero is _____ (11).
- Alex spends _____ (12) a day on his homework and Fleur spends _____ (13) a day.

Grammar: talking about obligations: must / have to

must and *have to* are **modal verbs** and we use them to say that it is necessary to do something. The meanings of *must* and *have to* are nearly the same. The small difference is that if I say: *I must do something*, this means I myself have decided that it is necessary. If I say: *I have to do something*, this means that somebody else has decided that it is necessary.

You can use *must* to talk about the present and the future, but not the past. You can use *have to* in all tense forms:

- *I must see him now (present) / I must see him tomorrow (future).*
- *I have to work on Sundays / I had to work last Sunday / I will have to work next Sunday.*

The negative forms are: *mustn't* and *don't / doesn't have to*

mustn't and *don't have to* have completely different meanings. You *mustn't* go there = იქ არ უნდა წახვიდე!; You *don't have to* go there = შენი იქ წასვლა არ არის აუცილებელი.

11. In your notebooks write what Tina 'has to do' and 'doesn't have to do'. Then write about yourself. Tina has to/doesn't have to; I have to/don't have to.

- | | |
|---|--|
| a. get up early on weekdays (yes) | d. wear a school uniform (yes) |
| b. make the bed (no) | e. go straight home after classes (no) |
| c. be at home at 9 o'clock every evening (no) | f. go to school on Saturdays (no) |

Ex. Tina has to get up early on weekdays, but I don't have to.

12. Complete these sentences with **must** or **have to** in the correct form. In some cases both are possible.

- My job starts at nine, so I must be there by then.
- Last year I _____ work very hard.
- David doesn't like his job. He _____ work on Saturdays.
- We can't do this job ourselves. We _____ ask somebody to help us.
- I think that in future everybody _____ wear a uniform at school.
- You look so pale. I think you _____ go and see the doctor.
- I didn't feel well yesterday. I _____ take three kinds of medicine.

Action-oriented task: Make a choice



Speaking

13.

Work in groups of three or four. You have decided to watch an English speaking TV channel together. Look at the programmes shown by the different channels, and choose the channel your group will enjoy watching. Then nominate a speaker who will tell the class which channel your group has chosen, and why you have chosen it.

Television choice Programmes of the day

Music channel

7.00 - 8.30 pm

Exclusive video and TV clips of the sixties, music videos of all times

Films channel

7.30 - 9.15 pm

Bonnie and Clyde: Gangster drama starring Warren Beatty and Faye Dunaway

Eurosport channel

8.15 - 10.10 pm

Milan vs Juventus
Italian Series A Championship

Discovery channel

6.00 - 7.15 pm

What the Romans did for us:
Adventures in Human Evolution



Now get ready to write

14. Write four reasons why your group has chosen to watch a particular TV channel. Start with:

- Our group has decided to watch the channel because...

You may use these words and expressions: *I admire / light programmes / serious channel / gain knowledge / good for personal development / entertainment...*

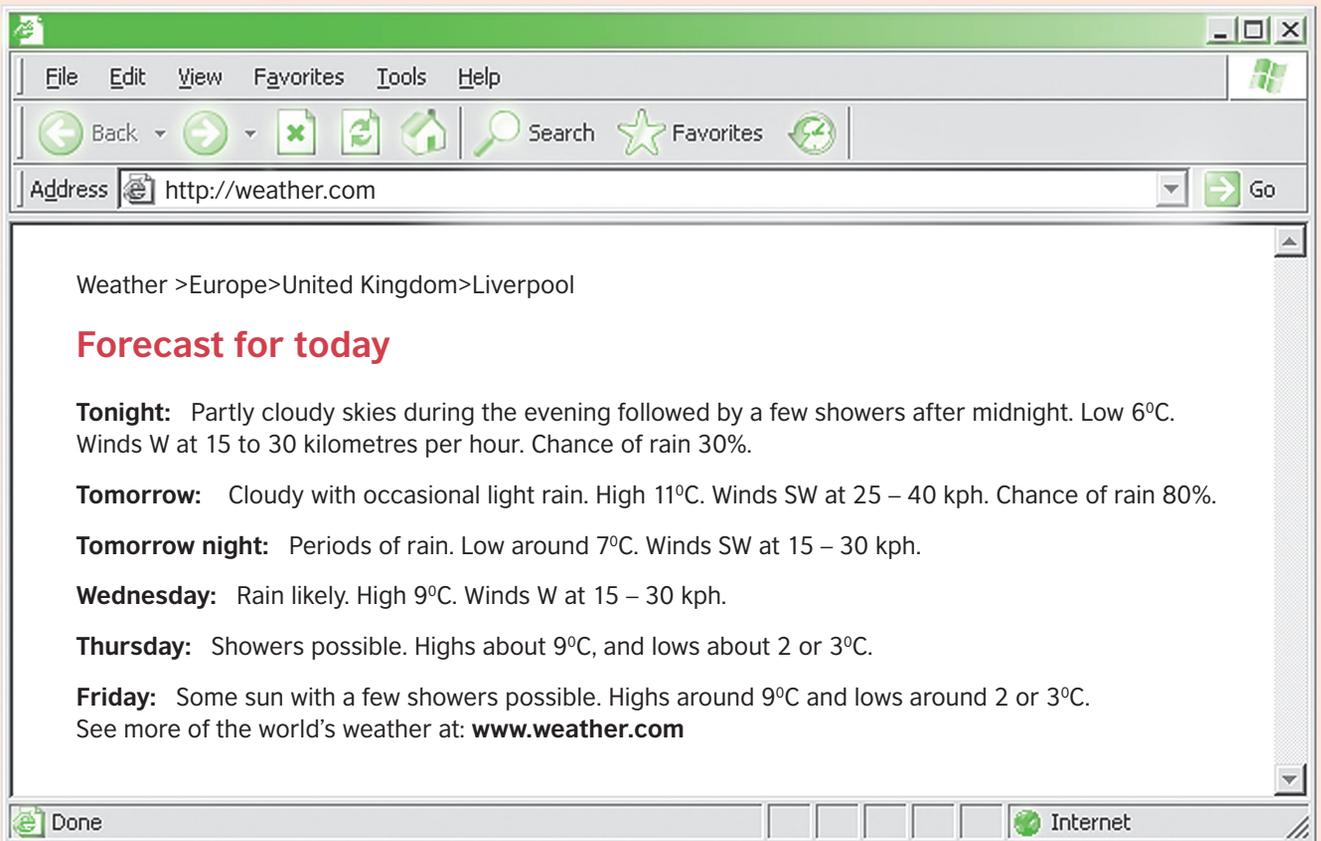
  **Reading**



1. Take one minute to write down as many words and phrases connected to weather as you can. Compare your list with your friends' lists.



2. Now read this weather forecast for Liverpool and do the task below. This is how it was put on the Internet.



| | |
|------------------------------|---------------------|
| High = maximum temperature | Low = minimum temp. |
| W = West | SW = South-West |
| kph = kilometres per/an hour | C = Centigrade |



3. Find five statements below which are true according to the weather forecast given above.

1. Tonight the chance of rain in Liverpool is 60%. *Not true.*
2. On Wednesday the wind will blow at 15 – 30 kilometres an hour.
3. Tomorrow will be a cloudy and rainy day.
4. The maximum temperature on Friday will be 4°C.
5. There is an 80% chance of rain tomorrow.
6. Perhaps it will rain on Thursday.
7. Tomorrow night the wind will blow from the south west.

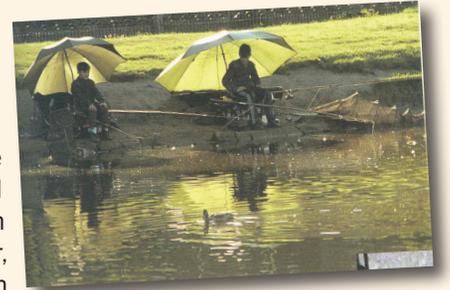


4. Read the two texts about the weather and try to guess the meaning of the underlined words. Then choose the best two titles for them from these four.

- 1. How temperatures are measured
- 2. Changing weather
- 3. What the weather is like in Britain
- 4. The official system

A.

When people think about the weather in Britain, they usually think of grey skies and rain. But the climate in Britain is generally mild. Although the weather is quite changeable, the temperature is rarely above 32°C, or below 10°C. March to June are the driest months and September to January are the wettest. If you visit the mountainous areas of the west and north you can expect more rain than in central parts of Britain. May, June and July are the months of the longest daily duration of sunshine – from five to eight hours, depending on the region. November, December and January have the least sunshine – only an hour a day in Northern Scotland or two hours a day on the south coast of England.



B.

Temperature can be measured by two systems: Celsius or Centigrade (C) and Fahrenheit (F). In Britain the temperature used to be measured using the Fahrenheit scale, but now in Britain, as well as in other European countries, the Centigrade system is officially used. This is true for the USA too. In Georgia we have always measured temperatures with the Centigrade system. To say what a temperature in Centigrade means in Fahrenheit is not very easy. To give you an idea, 0°C is the same as 32°F, and 37°C is the same as 99°F.



5. Read the statements about the texts and say whether they are true or false.

- 1. The weather in Britain changes very often. *True*
- 2. The temperature is often higher than 32 degrees.
- 3. There is very little rain in September.
- 4. The central parts of Britain are wetter than the mountain regions.
- 5. For most of the winter months, the sun shines only two hours a day on the south coast.
- 6. Traditionally the Fahrenheit system was used both in Britain and in the USA.
- 7. You can easily transfer temperatures in Centigrade to Fahrenheit.

Vocabulary in Context



6. Read the phrases and find their English translations in the texts. Note that only some phrases are underlined in the texts.

- 1. ყველაზე უფრო ნესტიანი თვე: the wettest month
- 2. ტემპერატურის გაზომვა
- 3. ამინდის პროგნოზი
- 4. მოღრუბლული ცა
- 5. ცვალებადი ამინდი
- 6. შხაპუნა წვიმა
- 7. მოსალოდნელია თოვლი
- 8. ყველაზე უფრო მშრალი თვე
- 9. რბილი კლიმატი



7. Read the dialogues and complete the sentences in your notebooks with the appropriate words from this list. One word is extra.

changeable forecast like measure west seaside quite typical used

- 1. - Can you tell me what the weather is like (1) in Batumi in summer? I'd like to spend my holidays there.
 - It's quite _____ (2) you know. There are sunny days but it can be _____ (3) rainy too.
 This is _____ (4) of places which are near the sea in Georgia. It usually rains a lot and most of the _____ (5) resorts in Georgia are quite humid.
- 2. - How do you _____ (6) the temperature in Georgia? What scale do you use?
 - We've always _____ (7) Centigrade to measure temperature. So, when I see the weather _____ (8) on TV, if they give the temperatures in Fahrenheit, I don't understand it at all!



8. Liz Morris is a woman scientist who traveled in Antarctica. Read these extracts from Liz's diary of her journey and complete the sentences with the words from the list. One word is extra.

Antarctica cold behind brought ~~sense~~ sleep sunset temperatures north over

January: We travel every few days, pulling our sledges from site to site. There is such a sense (1) of freedom! All my belongings are on the sledge _____ (2) me. I am enjoying the adventure and the romance..."

February: It's getting really _____ (3) now. Winter is coming fast. You almost never see the sun or the _____ (4), although it's never actually dark. At night the _____ (5) go down as low as 30 degrees. When it's cold I can't _____ (6). I've read the three or four books we _____ (7) with us... I know it will be great when this journey is _____ (8), but I'm not bored because I am fascinated by everything I see and do in _____ (9).



Listening

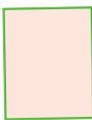


9. Read what Jenny writes to Paul. Then listen to the three weather forecasts. Which forecast corresponds to the postcard?

Dear Paul,

Beautiful sunshine for our sightseeing this morning – a bit cold, but that was all right. We got into the local history museum just before the showers started and spent the afternoon there. We loved it!

All the best,
Jenny



To: Paul Parker

23 Park St.

York, UK

Grammar: giving advice: should/had better

Should and had better are modal verbs. We use them when we want to give advice or give our opinion. **should** is used for more general advice; **had better** is used for a specific situation:

- You should eat more vegetables. (general advice)
- You don't look very well. You'd better go home. (specific situation)

We often use **should** and **had better** with I think/ I don't think /Do you think?

- Do you think I should tell her I'm sorry?
- I think you'd better wear these shoes.
- I don't think you should listen to him.

Negative forms are: You shouldn't be watching TV at this time.
You'd better not drink cold water now.

Remember: You had better do it = You'd better do it.

10. What would you advise? Read about these people and advise them what to do, or not to do.
Use: *I think/I don't think...should...*

1. Your younger sister stays up very late. You say to her:
I think you should go to bed earlier.
2. Your friend Vakho has started smoking. You think it's not a good idea. You say to him:
3. Your sister is going to take an English exam soon. You want her to get a good mark. You say to her:
4. Your cousin wants to get married. You think it's a bad idea because he is very young. You say to him:
5. Your friend has a bad cold. You want him to stay in bed. You say to him:
6. Your brother is always late for school. You don't like this. You say to him:

Action-oriented task: Write a postcard

  **Speaking**

11. **Work in small groups of 2 or 3. Ask your friend what the weather has been like since morning and what the weather is like NOW. Answer their questions. Try to use at least five of the expressions given below. Underline the expressions which you use.**

It was snowing / It was a bit (quite) cold / it was sunny/ the sky was cloudy / it was quite warm / I heard the forecast on the TV news/ It was windy / there was a light rain / the sky was clean/weather changed several times....

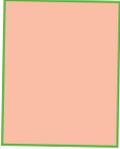
E.g. In the morning when I left for school it was a little cloudy. Then, when the classes started, it cleared up a little...

  **Now get ready to write**

12. Look at the postcard which Jenny wrote to Paul. Write a similar postcard in your notebooks to your friend saying what the weather is like at the moment. Write up to 4 lines.

Don't forget to write your friend's address on the postcard. See how it is written on Jenny's postcard.

Dear _____,



To: _____

All the best,



1. **Put the verbs into the correct form. Use Present Perfect or Present Perfect Continuous. In some cases both are possible.**

1. I have lived (live) in this town all my life.
2. He _____ (already/read) a hundred pages of this book.
3. I _____ (plant) flowers. That's why I am so dirty.
4. My brother _____ (never/wear) a tie. He hates it.
5. How long _____ (you/wait)? You look so tired.
6. My eyes hurt. I _____ (work) on the computer for three hours and still have some more to do.
7. Tommy _____ (not/be) to Warsaw since we were there together last winter.
8. Jack bought these shoes last month and _____ (wear) them since then.
9. Where _____ (you/be)?
10. The government _____ (repair) many roads this year.
11. How long _____ (Jack and Jill be married).
12. I _____ (not see) any Chinese films.



2. **Put the verbs in brackets in Present, Past or Future Passive.**

1. Thousands of books are published (publish) every year.
2. Two protesters _____ (arrest) at the demonstration yesterday.
3. We all hope Giorgi _____ (elect) for this post next year.
4. The London underground _____ (use) by two million people every day.
5. The results of the competition _____ (announce) yesterday.
6. We _____ (ask) to take a test next week.
7. I like this story. When _____ (it/translate)?
8. Which bridge in your town _____ (build) in the last century?
9. A new government _____ (elect) three years ago.
10. This football stadium _____ (reconstruct) a couple of years ago.
11. English _____ (speak) by millions of people all over the world.
12. The news _____ (announce) at 9 o'clock every evening.



3. **Complete the sentences with *should*, *had better*, *must* or *have to* in the affirmative or negative forms. In some cases more than one answer is possible.**

1. I haven't seen my Granny for ages. I must go and see her tonight.
2. It's cold. You _____ wear a coat.
3. It's a secret. You _____ tell it to anybody.
4. George can't come with us this evening. He _____ work.
5. You _____ study harder if you want to take this exam.
6. My school starts at 9, so I _____ get up at 8.
7. In our school we _____ wear uniforms.
8. We _____ stop for petrol. The car will stop soon.
9. You _____ be playing football. You look so ill.
10. You _____ do this. Nobody asked you to.
11. You _____ do this. It's prohibited.
12. It's a great film. You _____ go and see it.

↓

4. Complete each sentence with the appropriate phrase. One phrase is extra.

strong desire after graduation are awarded am inspired writing career
 programmes for entertainment drama club is...changeable is ... prohibited
 seeks success gained...experience major success ambulance driver

1. I like acting so I would like to join a drama club.
2. He _____ valuable _____ while working for his father's firm.
3. David is very ambitious. He always _____.
4. He started his _____ at the age of 30 and now he is a famous writer.
5. People know her by this song. It has been her _____.
6. Three scientists _____ this prize by a special jury every year.
7. _____ he went to the States and is still there.
8. I _____ by my parents. They always encourage me.
9. Smoking in this building _____ strictly _____.
10. You never know what the weather will be in Batumi. It _____ so _____.
11. He worked as an _____ during the war.
12. She has always had a _____ to travel around the world.

↓

5. How many words do you know? In your notebooks write the Georgian translation next to each word. Then check the meaning in the Wordlist at the end of the book. Count the correct answers and write the number. All the words are from units 9-12.

Out of 30 words I know _____.

- | | | |
|------------------------------|-----------------|----------------|
| 1. investor <u>ინვესტორი</u> | 2. artistic | 3. reporter |
| 4. showers | 5. channel | 6. talent |
| 7. artist | 8. favourite | 9. advertising |
| 10. ambition | 11. fashionable | 12. band |
| 13. experience | 14. award | 15. suffer |
| 16. major | 17. valuable | 18. gain |
| 19. changeable | 20. viewer | 21. prohibit |
| 22. broadcast | 23. income | 24. series |
| 25. wet | 26. dry | 27. mild |
| 28. measure | 29. duration | 30. forecast |

➔  Reading

1. There are thousands of film actors and actresses. Hundreds of them are good and some of them are just starting. But only a few become “legends”. Can you name any movie legends? Tell your partner.
2. Have you ever seen any of these all-time movie legends? Read these four texts once, without paying attention to the gaps.

Leonardo DiCaprio (1974 -)



Data: He was born in Los Angeles, California. He first acted at age five, performing on the children’s television show. (1) ____ In 2016, he won his first Oscar for Best Actor in the film *The Revenant*. Today he is one of the most popular celebrities. As one of Hollywood’s biggest stars, he

is on the list of top 10 most handsome men in the world. **He once said:** “Don’t think for a moment that I’m really like any of the characters I’ve played. I’m not. That’s why it’s called acting.”

Name: Elizabeth Taylor (1932 -2011)



Data: Born in London, she moved to California with her parents during World War Two. (2) ____ In the 1950s and 1960s she was already one of Hollywood’s most beautiful and gifted actresses. She was married eight times and won two Oscars as well as many other awards in a career that has lasted over 40 years.

She once said: “I live in the present and look forward to the future.”

Name: Marilyn Monroe (1926-1962)



Data: She was a model before she became an actress. Her first film appeared in 1948. After that she made 28 more films. She usually played the role of a ‘dumb’ blonde. But she herself was far from dumb. (3) ____ After her early and mysterious death in 1962, movie fans turned her from a film star into

a legend.

She once said: “The best way for me to prove myself as a person is to prove myself as an actress.”

Name: Charlie Chaplin (1889 - 1977)



Data: Born in London, he went to Hollywood in 1910. Four years later he created ‘the little tramp’. (4) ____ He was one of the silent movie era’s most successful comics, writers and film directors. He left America in the 1950s and spent his later years in Switzerland.

He once said: “I remain one thing and one thing only, and that is a clown.”

3. Now read the texts again and put the sentences below into the right places in the texts. There is one extra sentence.

- a. There she became one of Hollywood’s most successful child stars in the 1940s.
- b. It was his best-loved character, whose hat, walking stick and moustache soon became world-famous.
- c. She acted at university and on the New York stage in the 1970s.
- d. She was, in fact, a very talented actress.
- e. Later, as a teenager, he made numerous commercials and educational films.

4. Who are the sentences about? Choose and say the appropriate name.

| He/She... | Leonardo DiCaprio | Elizabeth Marilyn Taylor | Charlie Monroe | Chaplin |
|--|-------------------|--------------------------|----------------|---------|
| 1. started his/her career in television before moving on to films. | V | | | |
| 2. was a person of many talents. | | | | |
| 3. explains what acting means. | | | | |
| 4. was very different from his/her on-screen character. | | | | |
| 5. felt very optimistic about the future. | | | | |
| 6. first tried working in the fashion industry. | | | | |

Vocabulary in Context

5. Match the underlined words with their Georgian equivalents. The contexts will help you.

| | |
|---|--|
| <p>1. Eddie Murphy became the biggest <u>celebrity</u>.</p> <p>2. <u>Tramps</u> went from house to house asking for food.</p> <p>3. Julia Roberts won the Best Actress <u>award</u>.</p> <p>4. He realized that his acting <u>career</u> was over.</p> <p>5. He got an Oscar for the Best <u>Director</u>.</p> <p>6. He is a big <u>fan</u> of Elvis Presley.</p> <p>7. She's just a <u>dumb blonde</u>.</p> <p>8. He is a <u>gifted</u> actor.</p> | <p>a. კარიერა</p> <p>b. ნიჭიერი</p> <p>c. რეჟისორი</p> <p>d. სულელი ქერა ლამაზმანი</p> <p>e. გულმემატკივარი</p> <p>f. მანანალა</p> <p>g. ჯილდო</p> <p>h. ძალიან ცნობილი ადამიანი</p> |
|---|--|

6. Match the words under A with the words under B and write seven phrases in your notebooks. For example: film + director. Note that some phrases under A can be paired with more than one word under B.

A

| | |
|------------|-----------|
| 1. film | 5. world |
| 2. feel | 6. silent |
| 3. popular | 7. win |
| 4. movie | |

B

| | |
|--------------|---------------|
| a. celebrity | e. star |
| b. director | f. movie |
| c. fans | g. optimistic |
| d. famous | h. an Oscar |

7. Read the text about an American actor James Dean and complete the sentences in your notebooks with the words from the box. There is one extra word.

Young people's movie hero

It was not until the 1950s that films about young people began to be made in America. The first hero (1) of these films was James Dean. He was a brilliant young _____ (2) who was very different from other actors. And teenagers of the '50s understood him and loved him. In his films, James Dean usually _____ (3) as a moody, confused and angry young man. Before him, people had never seen _____ (4) actors who didn't laugh or smile in their films. He immediately became a top movie _____ (5). However, his acting _____ (6) did not last long because he died tragically in a car crash at the age of 24. James Dean's life was very short but full of action. While he was alive, he was a star although he didn't receive any major _____ (7), like an Oscar. But after his death in 1955, millions of his movie _____ (8) turned him from a star into a _____ (9).

- awards
- appeared
- actor
- career
- hero
- fans
- legend
- movie
- role
- star



Listening

8. *He's the screen's favourite spy. His secret agent number is 007. Can you guess his name? That's right. His name is James Bond. Have you seen any of his films? Tell your partner what you know about James Bond and the films he acts in.*

9. *True or False? Now listen to an interview with Thomas Wheatley, an actor who acted in *The Living Daylights*, one of the James Bond films and find three statements below which are true according to the information in the interview.*

1. Thomas Wheatley went through a very difficult interview to get the part. F
2. Thomas Wheatley was already an experienced actor when he got a part in a Bond film.
3. The crew of the film made Thomas Wheatley feel at home during the shooting.
4. Thomas Wheatley's hero needed more than five different suits.
5. Some very famous guests were present at the premiere.
6. The film was premiered at the Rex cinema.

Grammar: Yes / No questions, Wh-questions

Look at the questions given in groups A and B below. What makes these groups different? Read them carefully and then decide with your partner how they differ from one another.

A

Are you from Canada?
Does he work hard?
Have you seen the new James Bond film?

B

What's the time?
Where are you from?
Who works hard?

The questions in group A are called Yes/No questions. This is because the answer to these questions is either Yes or No.

The questions in group B are called Wh-questions, simply because they all start with the words: What, Who, Where, When, Why, or How, and (with the exception of How) these words begin with Wh.

Now write down one example of each type of question. Then, with your partner, see if you can answer these questions. You may ask your teacher for advice.

- What is the word order in Yes/No questions?
- What auxiliary verb do we use to form a Yes/No question in Present Simple and in the Past Simple?
- What is the word order in Wh-questions? Say in which case the word order does not change? (remember the question: **Who works hard?**)

Report your answers to these questions to the whole class.

10. *In your notebooks copy these words in their right order to make sentences.*

1. leave / I / can / today / early? Can I leave early today?
2. time / start / the / What / does / match?
3. go / walk / a / Shall / for / we?
4. does / cost / much / book / this / How?
5. rain / Did / week / last / it?
6. ever / you / been / Have / Rome / to?
7. often / go / you / the / cinema / How / do / to?

11. Read the text about Walt Disney and write questions to the words in BOLD.

Walt Disney: the greatest cartoon maker

The greatest cartoon-maker in cinema history was **Walt Disney** (1). He produced his first Mickey Mouse cartoon in **1928** (2). **Both children and adults** (3) immediately fell in love with this cartoon character. Then, three years later, Disney created his second cartoon superstar - **Donald Duck** (4). By this time he already worked with **a large team of cartoonists** (5) who helped him to draw thousands of pictures for his all time classic 'Snow White and the Seven Dwarfs'. Walt Disney died in **1966** (6). Disneyland in California and Disneyworld in Florida receive **millions** (7) of visitors every year.



Ex.: 1. Who was the greatest cartoon-maker in the cinema history?

Action-oriented task: Write a text message

Speaking

12.

Work with a partner. Exchange your experience and your opinions about films. Use these questions to guide your discussion. What is the most interesting film you've seen at the cinema or on TV recently? Who acted in it? Who is your favourite actor or actress and which of their roles do you remember best?

Use at least five of the words and phrases below to help you describe the film and your screen hero.

Hit of the year... / It was really scary... / It made me laugh... / romantic/horror film... / western/comedy... / funny... / frightening... / science fiction... / gifted... /box-office name

Now get ready to write

13. Here is Nick's invitation text message to Mari. Read the message and then, using it as a model, write your own text message to invite your friend card to your friend.

Hi Mari,

Would you like to go and see King Arthur this Saturday? It's a good historical film. The reviews are great and it's the premiere. It's really worth seeing so we shouldn't miss it. It's on at the Amirani Cinema. It starts at 8 p.m. Tickets cost 5 Laris. Give me a ring if you're free and would like to come. Then I'll book the tickets.

Best wishes,

Nick

Hi _____,

Let's go and see _____ this weekend. It's a good _____ film. The reviews are great and it's the premiere. We shouldn't _____ it, because it's really worth seeing. It's on at the _____. It starts at _____.

Tickets cost _____.

Let me know if you're _____ and would like to come. Then I'll _____ the tickets.

Lots of love,

➔  Reading



1. Find out from your partner:

- a. if they have ever written an email or a postcard and if so, who they wrote it to.
- b. if there was any special reason for writing it.



2. Read the advert below carefully. Then read the email which Nick wrote to Mari and her reply. When you've read Mari's reply, choose the correct answer to this question:

Did Mari accept Nick's invitation? YES NO

Body Beautiful Tbilisi sports centre

We are delighted to welcome you to *Body Beautiful* – a sports centre - where you will find some of the best and certainly the newest sports facilities in the city. This leisure centre opened its doors at the end of November and has been the most popular place for young people since then.

Being a member means that you can also have access to the biggest skating rink in the city. Why not join NOW and lead a healthier life!

The centre is very easy to reach. It is ideally located in the heart of Tbilisi.

For more information please call: (+995) 732 52 25 or email: bodyb@tbilisi.ge



Nick

Dear Mari,

How are things with you? I hope you enjoyed the film we saw yesterday. Now I'm writing to invite you to come with me to a fantastic new sports centre which has just opened near my house. It has got indoor and outdoor tennis courts, a huge swimming pool and courts for basketball, mini-football and badminton. There's a skating rink too, and a very modern gym. And if you're hungry or thirsty, there's a nice café where you can have drinks and snacks.

Let me know if you're interested. It would be great to see you again and hear all your news! AAA yes, thank you very much for the lovely key holder!

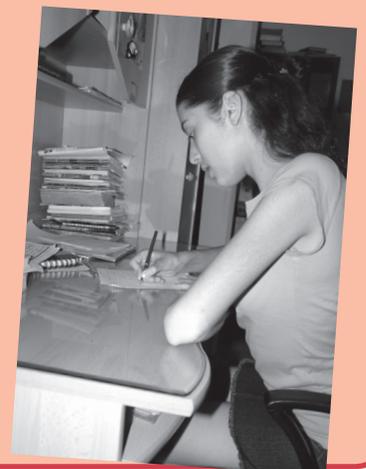
Love,

Hi Nick,

Thank you for your invitation to the new leisure centre. It sounds great! I'd love to come with you. It would be great to relax for a couple of hours. Besides, you know how much I like playing tennis. We can also go swimming and then have some ice-cream in the café. I'm really looking forward to going there. Please give me a call when you're free. I'm glad you liked the key holder.

Best wishes,

Mari



3. Read the two emails again and answer the questions below. Write the phrases in your notebooks.

| Which phrase does: | |
|--|-----------|
| 1. Nick use to greet Mari? | Dear Mari |
| 2. Nick use to thank Mari for the present? | |
| 3. Nick use to invite Mari to the sports centre? | |
| 4. Nick use to end his email? | |
| 5. Mari use to say she likes the idea? | |
| 6. Mari use to end her email? | |

4. Two of these phrases are used for starting an email and four are used for ending an email. Group the phrases. Then read the emails again to check your answers.

- a. Thank you for you email b. Please write soon c. Best wishes
 d. I hope you are well e. I'm looking forward to your reply f. See you soon

Starting an email: Thank you for your email.
 Ending email.

5. Choose two sentences which are invitations. Then look again at the emails to check.

- a. There is a good film on at the Amirani cinema tonight.
 b. I would really like you to come to the cinema with us.
 c. I'd love to go to the cinema with you.
 d. I can't go with you today.
 e. The new cinema is really great.
 f. Please come to the cinema with us.

Vocabulary in Context

6. Match the underlined words and phrases with their Georgian equivalents. The contexts will help you.

| | |
|--|-------------------------|
| 1. new <u>leisure</u> centre | a. ნახემსება |
| 2. I'm <u>looking forward</u> to going there. | b. სათამაშო მოედანი |
| 3. It would be great to <u>relax</u> . | c. რამდენიმე საათი |
| 4. <u>a couple of hours</u> | d. დასასვენებელი ცენტრი |
| 5. You can get drinks and have <u>snacks</u> . | e. მოუთმენლად ველი |
| 6. <u>courts</u> for tennis and badminton | f. დასვენება, მოშვება |
| 7. <u>have access</u> to skating | g. დაშვება (დაიშვებით) |

7. Here is an advert for a new leisure centre. Read the advert and complete the sentences in your notebooks with the words from the box. One word is extra.

Looking for a way to stay in shape?

Then visit our leisure (1) centre, right in the centre of the city. We are pleased to _____ (2) Tbilisi residents and visitors _____ (3) to skating, aerobics, _____ (4) and _____ (5) swimming, tennis and much more. We are proud to offer you the right kind of _____ (6), comfortable environment for you to improve your health and general well-being. You can also enjoy a cup of coffee and exotic cocktails in our _____ (7). So, in your plans for the weekend, make sure you include a _____ (8) of hours at our centre!

- access
- café
- couple
- friendly
- offer
- ~~leisure~~
- relax
- indoor
- outdoor

UNIT 14

8. This is an email that Nana wrote to David. Choose the best word or phrase from the box for each gap. Two words are extra.

Hi David,
 My parents gave me some money and I'm going to _____ (1) it to buy an iPhone.
 Have you _____ (2) to the shopping centre yet? Why don't _____ (3) go together
 this Saturday? I've heard they have a fantastic collection of iPhones there. I know
 you are _____ (4) shopping and so am I. They say there is a nice café there as well,
 you can relax and _____ (5) some ice-cream. Please call me or email. I am _____ (6)
 to seeing you soon.
 Just a reminder: my email address has changed. Now it's nana@mail.com
 Love,
 Nana

- been
- fond of
- have
- looking forward
- much
- remember
- use
- we

Listening

9. You are going to listen to a tourist guide giving advice which theatres to visit in London. Listen and mark the four theatres the guide speaks about.

- | | | |
|--------------------|-----------------|--------------------|
| Canal Café Theatre | Royal Theatre | Donmar Theatre |
| Empire Theatre | Brixton Theatre | Marionette Theatre |

10. Listen to the recording again and match the place to its characteristics. Choose and say the appropriate name of the theatre.

| Which theatre: | Canal Café Theatre | Donmar Theatre | Empire Theatre | Brixton Theatre |
|--|--------------------|----------------|----------------|-----------------|
| <i>allows the audience to participate?</i> | ✓ | | | |
| <i>has high quality performances?</i> | | | | |
| <i>is a beautiful old theatre?</i> | | | | |
| <i>has the largest stage in Europe?</i> | | | | |
| <i>serves food?</i> | | | | |
| <i>in the past was rather uncomfortable?</i> | | | | |

Grammar: Yes / No questions in indirect speech

Look at the sentences:

Nick asked Mari if she went to the sports centre every Sunday.
 Mari asked Nick whether they could eat an ice-cream there.

These sentences are the indirect speech versions of the following Yes/No questions:
 "Do you go to the sports centre every Sunday?" Nick asked.
 "Can we eat an ice-cream there?" Marie asked.

In indirect speech, the Present form of the verb becomes Past, and the Past form becomes Past Perfect.
 In indirect speech of Yes/No questions, the conjunctions if or whether are used.

More examples are:

She asked me: "Do you listen to jazz?" – She asked (me) if I listened to jazz.
 He asked us: "Did you see him?" – He asked (us) whether we had seen him.

Look at the sentences again. Can you say what happens with the word order (നിർദ്ദേശാർത്ഥം) in indirect speech? Can you write several sentences in both: direct and indirect speech? Ask your teacher to help you. Show your sentences to your friends.



11. Turn the following indirect statements into direct speech.

1. She asked me if I was doing the right thing.
She asked: "Are you doing the right thing?"
2. He wondered whether there was any food in the house.
"Is there any food in the house?" he wondered.
3. She asked me if I had invited Irakli and Ann.
4. He wanted to know if I had a headache.
5. She wondered if she had bought a key-holder.
6. He asked me if I had telephoned my mother.
7. She wanted to know if the hotel had been expensive.



12. A police officer is asking you some questions about a robbery which happened in your neighborhood last night. Report his questions.

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| 1. 'Were you at home then?' | The police officer asked me if I had been at home then. |
| 2. 'Did you see the robbers?' | The police officer wanted to know |
| 3. 'Did you hear any noise?' | The police officer |
| 4. 'Were you sleeping at 2 a.m.?' | |
| 5. 'Did you call the police?' | |
| 6. 'Has this ever happened before?' | |

Action-oriented task: Write an invitation email



Speaking



13.

A new concert hall has recently opened in your town. You want to invite your friend to go there with you. Work in pairs. Tell your friend where the concert hall is, when you want to go there with them, and why you think it's a good idea. And try to use the following phrases.

Please come to the with us. / I would really like you to come to thewith us.
I would love to come with you.... / I am really looking forward to going there.

Then listen to your friend's invitation. Ask them questions if necessary.



Now get ready to write



14. Write an email to your friend inviting them* to a newly-opened concert hall on Saturday evening. While writing the invitation, follow the steps given below.

- Greet them
- Tell them about the new concert hall: where it is, why you like it.
- Say why you want to invite them.
- Write at what time you will see them (example: I'll see you at 6 o'clock)
- Start your letter with: Dear
- Finish your letter with: Love or Best wishes

Use the email in ex. 2 as a model.

Write at least 50 words.

(*Please note that them is used for both him/her)



1. This is an extract from the diary of 14-year-old Lizzie Brown from Boston, USA. While reading it, think about the underlined words and their possible meaning. When you've read the text, choose the correct answer to this question:

Did Lizzie's classmates start to love and respect her? YES NO

Monday, December 2nd

Some kids in my class make fun of me because of my clothes. I want cool clothes like everybody else, but since Dad left home, things have changed. Mum can't afford to buy me new clothes. I heard two girls saying: "Just because she's a good singer she thinks she's cool." And David does not notice me at all...I really am "Miss Unpopular." Luckily, Mr. Johnson brought back our maths test today, and I had one of the best results. I've also had my hair cut. I think it's a complete disaster, but Charlena says it's great.

Tuesday, December 3rd

I can't believe it! I'm going to be on Celebrity TV show! My best friend Charlena is happy for me. She's great. Why can't others be like her? She's the one I can always rely on and share all my secrets with. She says the other girls in the class don't like me because I'm talented. They are all jealous. Mum gave me some money to buy something beautiful to wear for the show. So I've bought a lovely blouse to go with my red skirt. Charlena says she thinks it's very trendy.

Wednesday, December 4th

The show was a big success. They presented me with three CDs of my favorite singers, and two tickets for a pop concert! The concert's tonight and I can't wait to be there! Of course Charlena is coming with me. They also said I could take part in a big singing competition next month. The prize for the winner is \$500. If I win, first of all I'll have an enormous party for everybody I know. Next, I'll buy lots of designer clothes and a music centre. Charlena says if I win the prize I should go travelling. I want to hug and kiss everybody around me.

Thursday, December 5th

The concert was great. The singers were all brilliant. They sang all their hits and the audience kept asking for more. At the end of their show they asked volunteers to come onto the stage to sing. Of course I didn't think about it too long; I went onto the stage and sang one of my songs. When I finished I closed my eyes and heard everybody clapping and cheering. I felt so good. It was the best feeling you can imagine.

Friday, December 6th

I went for a walk in the park with Charlena and we met some of our classmates. They said: "We should hang out more. Why don't we go and see a film one day?" In the evening I received an invitation to Susan Parker's birthday party. So they all want to make friends with me now and it's great! I'm so happy and I love them all. And you know what? David told me I looked beautiful! I can't believe it!

2. Do you remember the details from Lizzie's diary? Read the text again and complete these sentences.

1. Some kids in Lizzie's class make fun of her clothes.
2. Lizzie doesn't wear cool clothes because her mum can't _____ to buy her any.
3. Charlena is great because Lizzie can always share all her _____ with her.
4. Lizzy got two tickets for a _____.
5. The prize for the winner of the singing competition is _____.
6. Charlena says if Lizzy wins the competition she should _____.

3. When did these things happen? Choose and say the appropriate answer.

| When did it happen? | Mon. | Tue. | Wed. | Thur. | Fri. |
|---|------|------|------|-------|------|
| 1. Lizzie had her hair cut. | ✓ | | | | |
| 2. She appeared on TV. | | | | | |
| 3. She went shopping. | | | | | |
| 4. Her classmates tried to be friendly. | | | | | |
| 5. She got a top mark in Maths. | | | | | |
| 6. She performed in front of an audience. | | | | | |

Vocabulary in Context

4. Match the words with their meaning. The context will help you.

- | | |
|--|---------------------|
| 1. Who does he usually <u>hang out</u> with? | a. მოდური |
| 2. We need <u>volunteers</u> to help us do the job. | b. ნდობა, დაყრდნობა |
| 3. Maria <u>hugged</u> her dog. | c. შურს, ეჭვიანობს |
| 4. New York is full of <u>trendy</u> shops and restaurants. | d. დროს ატარებს |
| 5. Gio <u>is</u> never <u>jealous</u> of his friends' success. | e. სრული მარცხი |
| 6. Your best friend is the one you can always <u>rely on</u> . | f. მოხალისეები |
| 7. My last birthday party was a <u>complete disaster</u> . | g. ჩაეხუტა |

5. Copy and complete the table in your notebooks. The missing words were all used in the text.

| | | | | | | |
|-----------|-----------|------------|--------|----------|------------|------------|
| Noun | happiness | | beauty | | brilliance | |
| Adjective | happy | disastrous | | talented | | successful |

6. Giorgi is 18. Read this extract from his diary and complete the sentences in your notebooks with the words and phrases from the box. One word is extra.

Sunday, October 17th

My holiday is a complete disaster (1) because of the bad weather. Why didn't I believe my friends? They said I couldn't _____ (2) good weather at this time of the year. I thought they were all _____ (3). Now it's too late. When I get back I'll tell them how _____ (4) my holidays have been. They will all _____ (5) me. I'm so bored here. Every day I _____ (6) at a half-empty little café. There are a couple of _____ (7) shops near my hotel, so perhaps, just for a change, I'll go shopping tomorrow.

- ~~disaster~~
- disastrous
- hang out
- jealous
- make fun of
- rely on
- trendy
- volunteer

➔  **Listening**

7. Look at the words below. Do you know their meaning? Check them with your friend or your teacher. You can look them up in the wordlist in the end of the book.

charity competition developing countries lottery support unemployed

8. Now listen to three friends Isabel, Giorgi and Teodor discussing how they would spend one million dollars. Then answer the questions by choosing the appropriate name.

| WHO... | Isabel | Giorgi | Teodor |
|--|--------|--------|--------|
| 1. thinks people shouldn't spend money like water? | V | | |
| 2. would go travelling? | | | |
| 3. wants to help poor people? | | | |
| 4. is afraid of becoming a millionaire? | | | |
| 5. does not think they will win one million dollars? | | | |
| 6. would try to make their parents' wish come true? | | | |
| 7. would put some of the money in the bank? | | | |

Grammar: Verb + preposition

Look at the sentences:

- I should ask mum for advice.
- I told my classmates but they just laughed at me.
- She doesn't compare with anybody.
- I should try to keep away from those girls who don't like me.

As you see, the underlined verbs are followed by prepositions. Prepositions change the meaning of the verbs. For example: *to ask* means შეკითხვის დასმა, but *to ask for* means რაიმეს თხოვნა; or: *laugh* means სიცილი, *laugh at* means - დაცინვა

Now read some examples from Lizzie's diary and with your partner discuss how the prepositions change the meaning of the verbs.

- Mr. Johnson brought back our maths tests today.
- She's the one I can always rely on and share all my secrets with.

- Do you remember what prepositions follow the verbs *talk, look, belong, listen, wait*?
- With your friend think of some verbs which are followed by the prepositions *about, at, to*. Ask your teacher for help.

9. Complete the sentences with one word from list A (verbs) and one from list B (prepositions).

A. rely ~~laugh~~ share compare kept ask B. with ~~at~~ away for with on

- I don't like him. I think he laughs at me behind my back.
- When I have a problem I always _____ my best friend _____ advice.
- You can always _____ Ann to keep a secret.
- Her illness _____ her _____ from school for several weeks.
- The rides at the fair can't _____ the rides at Disneyland.
- Do you _____ all your secrets _____ your friends?

10. Here's an extract from Tina's diary. She has made 7 mistakes with prepositions. All the mistakes are underlined. Read the diary extract and correct the mistakes. Write the correct forms in your notebooks. In some cases two prepositions are possible.

Wednesday, July 3rd

I'm going with (1) a holiday next week. I've already looked on (2) every brochure at the travel agent's and I've decided to go in (3) Crete in Greece. It's a beautiful island with white sandy beaches. They say nothing can compare for (4) the blue colour of the Mediterranean sea. And I needn't worry on (5) the weather because it's always sunny there. However, I must try to protect my skin for (6) the sun. Tomorrow I'm going to ask the travel agent on (7) more information on the hotel and the flights.

Spend a holiday in Crete in Greece!
Enjoy white sandy beaches and blue Mediterranean sea.....

| | MISTAKE | CORRECTION |
|----|------------|--------------|
| 1. | going with | going on/for |
| 2. | _____ | _____ |
| 3. | _____ | _____ |
| 4. | _____ | _____ |
| 5. | _____ | _____ |
| 6. | _____ | _____ |
| 7. | _____ | _____ |

Action-oriented task: Write a diary

Speaking

11.

Imagine that you have won twenty thousand Laris on a TV show. What would you do with it? Spend it on exotic holidays and trendy clothes? Give it all to charity? Discuss all the possibilities with your partner, and decide what you would do. Share your ideas with the whole class. Use some of these phrases: probably / possibly / definitely / one hundred per cent.

Now get ready to write

12. Congratulations! You won one thousand Laris in a lottery and decided to spend two weeks on the Black Sea coast. Now you are having a wonderful time there.

In your notebooks write a 5-day diary to keep your happy memories fresh all your life. Write about the place you are staying at, the weather, the things you like best and the things you don't like, also the people you meet. Use the diary in ex. 1 as a model. Don't forget to write the dates.

Write 4-5 lines per day. You can use some of these expressions:

Here I am in... / the weather is / it's the ideal place for.../ today is a special day because.../ I'm a little bored today because... / I can't believe all this because.../ the weather today is... / today I met... / it's so exciting...

Monday, _____

Tuesday, _____

Wednesday, _____

Thursday, _____

Friday, _____

➔  Reading

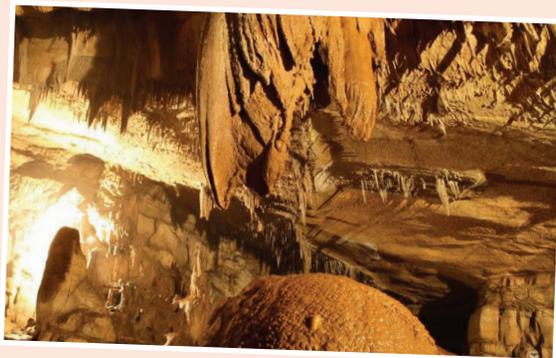


1. Before you read the text about the Sataplia cave below, take two minutes to ask these questions to your partner.

- What do you know about caves?
- Have you seen any caves in Georgia or elsewhere?



2. Now read a travel guide about the Sataplia cave. Try to understand the meaning of the underlined words from the context.



Sataplia cave: a travel guide

Location: Near Kutaisi. Best visited by taxi from Kutaisi (45 min. from the town centre). Ask for a dinosaur footprints.

Open: All year daily.

History: 1925 – Most beautiful cave of the area discovered by Petre Chabukiani, environmentalist from Kutaisi.
1935 – Sataplia Nature Preserve established.

Description: The Sataplia cave lies 6km north-west of Kutaisi. The cave is 300m long, 10m high and 12m wide. The cave is named after Mt. Sataplia, which is now a Nature Preserve. The preserve was intended to protect the five caves of the area and the dinosaur footprints. The most interesting parts of the cave are the rooms, which are called ‘chambers,’ all linked by passages that may be quite wide, or very narrow. In the cave you can also find underground rivers and waterfalls.

The Sataplia cave was made thousands of years ago by rain water, and a soft grey stone called limestone. Limestone is special in two ways. First, limestone contains many cracks and holes. Second, when rain water and air touch limestone, they dissolve it. The air and water temperatures in the cave are nearly equal (12-13°C). The temperature remains the same for the whole year as well.

The Sataplia cave was discovered by the Kutaisi environmentalist Petre Chabukiani on the Sataplia Hill. Apart from the Cave, Chabukiani discovered the settlement of the primitive man together with the footprints of a dinosaur. At the moment there are 200 dinosaur footprints discovered near the cave, some of them - gigantic. On the territory of Sataplia preserve three comparatively small caves have been discovered and studied recently. There is a speleological museum near the cave now.

This cave is hard to reach. Best is to take a taxi from Kutaisi town square which takes about 45min and costs about 15 GEL.

The Sataplia Cave as well as the footprints of dinosaurs make a big attraction for tourists.

3. Read the text again and write answers to the following questions.

1. Where is the Sataplia cave situated? North-West of Kutaisi.
2. How long does it take you to reach the Cave by taxi?
3. How are rooms/chambers linked in the Sataplia cave?
4. When was the Sataplia cave discovered?
5. What else can you find on Sataplia hill?
6. Who was Petre Chabukiani?
7. How many footprints of a dinosaur are there?

Vocabulary in Context

4. Read the words below and find their English equivalents in the text.

- | | | |
|-----------------------------|---------------|--------------|
| 1. აღმოჩენა <u>discover</u> | 2. მდებარეობს | 3. დასახლება |
| 4. დაშლა | 5. ჩანჩქერი | 6. შედარებით |
| 7. ნაფეხურები | 8. ნაკრძალი | |

5. Read the sentences below and write the opposites of the underlined words. All of them are given in the text above.

1. The Sataplia cave is not narrow. It's wide.
2. The limestone is not hard. It's _____.
3. The temperature in the cave is not different for the whole year. It remains _____.
4. Chabukiani didn't discover the settlement of modern people. It was the settlement of the _____ man.
5. Three caves were not discovered long ago. They have been discovered _____.
6. It's not easy to get to the cave. It's _____ to reach.

6. Read the text about the miracle of Australia and complete the sentences with the words from the box. One word is extra.



Miracle of Australia

One of the most beautiful things you can see in Australia is Uluru, also called Ayers Rock. It is a gigantic (1) rock which stands alone in the middle of the desert south-west of Alice Springs. It is three kilometers _____ (2) and 348 metres _____ (3). But what you can see is only one-sixth of the _____ (4) of the rock, because 2,100 metres of it is _____ (5). Uluru is 600 million years old, and it is the largest _____ (6) rock of its kind in the world. Thousands of tourists come each year to walk round it and look at it. The best time to see it is at the end of the day, when its colour _____ (7) from yellow to gold, then to red and finally to purple. Uluru was _____ (8) by Aborigines, and it belongs to the aboriginal Pitjantjara people.

- cave
- changes
- ~~gigantic~~
- height
- high
- long
- natural
- underground
- discovered

➔ ? | Listening

7. Do you know what a Tornado is? You are going to learn about it from a radio interview with Kathleen, who talks about a tornado in Kansas, her native state. Before you listen, choose the words in this list which you think you will hear. Then listen to the recording and compare how many words you guessed correctly. You will hear only 6 out of the 8 words given.

wind storms speed sun clouds building rivers damage

8. Read the sentences given below. Then listen to the interview again and choose the right ending for each sentence. The first has been done for you.



1. Besides Tornadoes Kansas is famous for...
 - a. wheat and sunflowers b. flowers c. sunflowers
2. Kathleen says that Tornadoes ...
 - a. are new in Kansas b. have always been there c. are rare in Kansas
3. The name of the state Kansas means...
 - a. people of south b. people of the south wind c. local people
4. Tornadoes are so fast that they form...
 - a. showers b. a cylinder of a cloud c. dust
5. Tornadoes are also known as...
 - a. cylinders b. twisters c. clouds
6. The wind rotates at the speed of ...
 - a. 500kph b. 50kph c. 400kph
7. The students in Kathleen's story...
 - a. were carried by Tornado b. lost their way c. destroyed their house

Grammar: Word formation

Look at the words: *dislike, disorder / impossible, impolite*. These words have prefixes **dis-** (as in dislike) and **im-** (as in impossible). Both prefixes **dis-** and **im-** have a negative meaning, e.g. *I dislike that person = I don't like that person; He is so impolite = He is not polite*.

Remember: a prefix goes at the front of a word to make a new word.

Now look at these words: *powerful, meaningful / enjoyable, eatable*. These words have suffixes **-ful** (as in powerful) and **-able** (as in eatable). Suffixes; **-ful** and **-able** both form adjectives from nouns or from verbs.

Remember: a suffix goes at the end of a word to make a new word.

List as many words as you can with *dis-* and *im-* prefixes and *-ful* and *-able* suffixes. Ask your teacher or look up for more words in the dictionary. Compare your list with your friends'.

9. Put these words into two groups: a. words with a prefix; b. words with a suffix.

| | | | | |
|------------|---------------|-------------|------------|----------|
| impatient | disinterested | tactful | manageable | impolite |
| disbelieve | countable | impractical | mouthful | powerful |

a. words with a prefix: *impatient*

b. words with a suffix:

10. Add a prefix or a suffix from the list to the underlined words.

dis- im- -able -ful

- Zaza is a dishonest young man.
- I don't think the film was good. In fact, I was ...interested.
- Don't be so ... patient. Wait a minute.
- You are not right, I completely ... agree with you.
- People in this town are really very help...
- Sandro is always rude. In fact, he's rather ... polite
- 'Pen' is a count.... noun.

Action-oriented task: Design your travel guide



Speaking

11.

Work in pairs. Ask your friend if they have ever seen a cave or any other wonder of the nature. When was it? Where is the place? What was special about the place? Why does your friend think it is a wonder of the world? Make notes. Then, report what you have heard from your friend to the whole class. Listen to others reporting. Whose story impressed you most and why?



Now get ready to write

12.

12. Write a short travel guide of a place you know best. This can be a cave, a church, a cathedral, or any other place of interest you know best. In your travel guide you might include the following sections:

Description:

Location:

Ticket Price:

Use some of the phrases from the list given below.

It lies... / is named after... / was built/founded/discovered...../ the most interesting part... / a big tourist attraction... / can be reached by.../is unforgettable for.../ is impressive for...

Refer to the Satapia Cave travel guide as an example in ex. 2.

Write between 70 - 90 words.

↓

1. TV presenter Emma Miller interviewed Brad Pitt, who plays Mr. Smith in "Mr. and Mrs. Smith". Report the interviewer's questions.

1. Did you enjoy playing the part of Mr. Smith? She asked him if he had enjoyed playing the part of Mr. Smith.
2. Is it a difficult part to play? She asked him
3. Are you similar to Mr. Smith in any way?
4. Was it interesting to work with Angelina Jolie?
5. Do you sometimes get fan letters?
6. Do your fans recognize you in the street?

Now turn the following reported questions into direct speech.

7. The interviewer asked him how he had got the part. 'How did you get the part?'
8. The interviewer asked him if the premier was at the Odeon.
9. The interviewer asked him where they had shot the scenes.
10. The interviewer asked him what he liked best about being a famous actor.
11. The interviewer asked him if Mr. Smith was his best-loved character.
12. The interviewer asked him if he had ever won an Oscar?

↓

2. Add a prefix or a suffix from the box to the underlined words and write the answers in your notebooks.

dis- im- -able -ful

1. Goga gets very im patient when people drive too slowly in front of him.
2. My hair's more manage..... since I had it cut.
3. It's a verypractical plan.
4. Giorgi shook his head inbelief when I told him the news.
5. You weren't very tact..... about the meal my mother cooked.
6. Unlike most boys of his age, Irakli was veryinterested in cars.
7. The president is the most power..... man in the country.
8. 'Money' is not a count..... noun.
9. It would be verypolite not to write and thank them.
10. He's beenhonest with us, and I'll never trust him.
11. The shop assistant was very help..... .
12. Iagree, I think it's a bad idea.

↓

3. Match the sentence halves.

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. I'll wait <u> c </u> | a. away from the blazing fire. |
| 2. I think we should ask | b. from the sun. |
| 3. You will have to share your toys | c. for you outside. |
| 4. Instant coffee doesn't compare | d. at each other and smiled. |
| 5. Police warned people to keep | e. my book back tomorrow. |
| 6. At school everybody laughed | f. for my key holder. |
| 7. My mother always worries | g. with your little sister. |
| 8. Sandro promised to bring | h. on Maka to keep a secret. |
| 9. Try to protect your skin | i. for some information. |
| 10. The children looked | j. with freshly ground coffee. |
| 11. You can't rely | k. at him and called him names. |
| 12. I'm looking | l. about me when I am late. |



4. Complete each sentence with the appropriate phrase.

acting career hangs out complete disaster sports facilities a couple of hours
 have drinks and snacks leisure centre looking forward to trendy shops
 have access made fun of won...awards rely on

1. I am looking forward to going to the centre.
2. Do you _____ to the Internet?
3. I can _____ Martha, I know she won't tell anyone.
4. I don't like the people she _____ with.
5. In our café you can _____.
6. There are the newest _____ at the new sports centre.
7. Let's go to the park and relax for _____.
8. Unfortunately, at the age of sixty-five her _____ was over.
9. The film 'Titanic' _____ a lot of _____.
10. The kids at school always _____ Ann's clothes.
11. The new _____ invites young people.
12. Lizzi doesn't like her haircut. She thinks it's a _____.



5. How many words do you know? In your notebooks write the Georgian translation next to each word. Then check the meaning in the Wordlist at the end of the book. Count the correct answers and write the number. All the words are from units 13-16.

Out of 30 words I know _____.

- | | | |
|------------------------------|----------------|--------------|
| 1. fan <u>გულშემატკივარი</u> | 2. relax | 3. tramp |
| 4. comic | 5. hero | 6. hug |
| 7. jealous | 8. court | 9. delighted |
| 10. volunteers | 11. gifted | 12. legend |
| 13. waterfall | 14. dissolve | 15. handsome |
| 16. disaster | 17. cave | 18. discover |
| 19. settlement | 20. mysterious | 21. located |
| 22. trendy | 23. footprints | 24. preserve |
| 25. comparatively | 26. gigantic | 27. snack |
| 28. director | 29. career | 30. gym |

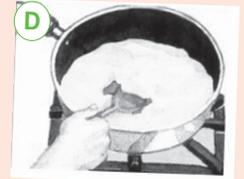
➔  Reading

↓
1. Take a minute or two to ask these questions to your partner.

- What is your favourite food?
- Do you know how to cook your favourite food?

↓
2. Read the words below, then look at the pictures and try to match the pictures with the words and phrases. E.g. 1-D.

1. stir
2. pour in
3. beat (the eggs)
4. bake
5. peel
6. chop



↓
3. Now read the recipes for Toffee Apple and Omelette. Have you tried any of these?

Toffee Apple

Ingredients

1 apple, cut into rings
1 tsp sugar
some cinnamon

For the toffee sauce:

55 gr unsalted butter
55 gr sugar
1 tbsp honey
1 large bar of chocolate, chopped
4 orange slices

Method

- Preheat the oven to 80°C .
- Peel the apples. Place an apple ring on a baking tray and sprinkle with some of the sugar and some cinnamon. Repeat this process, putting the apple rings on top of one another.
- Bake in the oven for 10-12 minutes, or until the apple is soft.
- Melt the butter and sugar in a small pan until a caramel is formed.
- Add the honey and chocolate to the caramel as soon as it melts. The Toffee sauce is ready.
- Put the baked apple on a serving plate.
- Pour the toffee sauce over the apple.

Omelette

Ingredients

5 eggs
30 gr butter
1 tbsp sour cream
75 gr cheese, grated*
salty and freshly ground pepper

Method

- Put the eggs in a bowl and beat them. Add salt and freshly ground black pepper to season.
- Melt the butter in a pan and add the eggs. Stir with a wooden spoon.
- When the omelette is almost ready, pour in the sour cream and sprinkle over the cheese.
- Fold over the omelette in the pan and serve.
- Cooking time 10 to 30 mins. Preparation time less than 30 mins

*grated cheese: გახეხილი ყველი

4. Read the recipes again, then put the actions in the right order.

Toffee Apple

- a. sprinkle some sugar ____
- b. peel the apples 1
- c. add honey ____
- d. put on a serving plate ____
- e. bake in the oven ____

Omelette

- a. add salt and pepper ____
- b. beat the eggs ____
- c. melt the butter ____
- d. serve ____
- e. stir with a wooden spoon ____

5. What do these shortened forms mean? Say their full forms.

- | | |
|---------|----------------|
| 1. tbsp | a. minutes |
| 2. C | b. grams |
| 3. mins | c. Celsius |
| 4. g/gr | d. table spoon |

Vocabulary in Context

6. Read the words and phrases below and find their English equivalents in the texts. Write the English equivalents in your notebooks.

- | | |
|--|----------------------------|
| 1. ცოტაოდენი დარიჩინი <u>some cinnamon</u> | 2. წინასწარ გააცხელე |
| 3. ახლად დაფქული | |
| 4. არაუფანი | 5. დააშხეფე, დააყარე |
| 6. დაჭერი რგოლებად | 7. დაუმატე წინაკა საკმაზად |

7. Match the words under A with the words under B and write the phrases in your notebooks. For example: baking + tray. Note that some words under A can be paired with more than one word under B.

A

| | |
|-----------|------------|
| 1. baking | 5. serving |
| 2. apple | 6. baked |
| 3. beat | 7. grated |
| 4. melt | |

B

| | |
|-----------|-------------|
| a. rings | e. plate |
| b. tray | f. the eggs |
| c. apple | g. butter |
| d. cheese | |

8. Read the recipe for Khachapuri. Complete the sentences in your notebooks with the words from the box. One word is extra.

Be a chef, bake khachapuri!

Beat 2 eggs, add 250 gr matsoni and some salt. Mix (1) with plain flour to make a soft dough* (ცომი). Divide the dough into four parts. _____ (2) out each part about half a finger thick. Make the filling with the cheese, mixed with one egg and 25 gr butter. Put the cheese filling on each part, _____ (3) them and press, rolling lightly. Fry in a heavy-bottomed pan or a baking _____ (4) with some butter on it. When the underside is _____ (5), turn the pie. Brush with butter on top and _____ (6) immediately.

tray
brown
~~mix~~
roll
serve
sprinkle
twist



Listening

9. You are going to listen to an interview with a famous chef Jim Mckey. Before you listen, In your notebooks write the phrases you think you will hear. Then listen and check if you were right. Note that out of 8 phrases given you will hear only 6.

cooking class chop onions cookery books made biscuits
 smelt great salads and meat hamburgers serve hot

10. Only five of these statements are true. Listen to the interview again and say True or False accordingly.

| Jim..... | True | False |
|--|------|-------|
| 1. started cooking when he grew up. | | V |
| 2. often asked teachers about recipes when he was a child. | | |
| 3. liked the biscuits in the book. | | |
| 4. made up his first recipe. | | |
| 5. is fond of cooking salads. | | |
| 6. says pizza is his specialty. | | |
| 7. is fond of eating chips and hamburgers. | | |

Grammar: Expressing the future

Look at the sentences:

- I'll bake an apple-pie when I buy a cookery book.
- Don't make a khachapuri until you see somebody do it.

As you notice, the time in the sentences is future, but Present tense is used in the clauses starting with **when** and **until**: when I buy... / until you watch.... We use Present tense also after **while**, **as soon as**, **before** and **after**. As you will see from the examples below, the meaning is always future.

- I'll bake toffee apple while I'm on holiday.
- As soon as you are ready, call me.
- You'll feel better after you drink warm milk.

Think of 2-3 sentences with the time clauses starting with: *when, until, as soon as, after* and *before*. Ask your teacher for help. Read the sentences to your partner. Listen to their sentences.

11. Five of the sentences below are wrong. Find the mistakes and correct them in your notebooks.

1. They will leave the village as soon as it will stop snowing. They will leave the village as soon as it stops snowing.
2. Irakli will talk to you as soon as the match will be over.
3. You like our new teacher when you see him.
4. Mari will go on holiday as soon as she finishes her studies.
5. Don't go! Wait until it will be ready.
6. I will see you when I will arrive.
7. Phone me when you get home.

12. Read the sentences and put the verbs into the Future Simple or Present Simple.

1. I (give) it to them when they (visit) us. I'll give it to them when they visit us.
2. I (not send) the parcel until I (hear) from you.
3. As soon as they (phone) me, I (contact) you.
4. When I (talk) to the teacher, I (give) him your news.
5. I (send) a post card when I (get) to London.
6. As soon as I (hear) the results, I (let) you know.
7. When my parents (find out) about it, there (be) trouble.
8. When his grandma (hear) about it, she (be) pleased.

Action-oriented task: Write a recipe

Speaking

13.

Imagine that you and your German guest want to have lunch in a café in your town. It's the first time your guest is in your country and he/she knows nothing about Georgian food. Look at the menu below, choose two dishes and tell your guest how they are made. Work with your partner. Imagine that your partner is your German friend.

Café Golden Eagle Menu

| | |
|-----------------------------|---------------------|
| Mchadi: 50 tetris | Satsivi: 4 Gel |
| Khachapuri: 1 Gel | Mtsvadi: 4 Gel |
| Red beans (lobio): 2.50 Gel | Khinkali: 60 tetris |

Use the words and phrases below. Ask your teacher for some more words or look them up in the dictionary.

beat eggs / boil / mix / roll out / add pepper(salt) / bake in the oven / serve hot... dough / plain flour / baking tray...

Now get ready to write

14. Your English speaking friend asked you to send him/her a recipe of your favourite Georgian food. Write a recipe according to the plan below:

Name:

Ingredients:

Method:

Refer to the recipes as an example in ex.3

➔  Reading



1. Take a minute or two to discuss these statements with your partner. Which of these are good and which are bad for your health?

| | Good for health | Bad for health |
|--|-----------------|----------------|
| 1. Going to bed on a full stomach | | ✓ |
| 2. Eating milk products | | |
| 3. Drinking water at mealtimes | | |
| 4. Eating chips and hamburgers every day | | |
| 5. Eating salty things | | |



2. Read the article from the students' health magazine. How many statements did you guess correctly?

You are what you eat

Did you know that your tongue and your fingernails show a lot about your health? In this extract from Britain's best selling book *You Are What You Eat*, you'll learn what to look for and how to correct your diet. Get a mirror – you're going to need one!



Dr. Gillian McKeith is a popular TV presenter and nutritionist. She knows from personal experience that poor quality meals may cause serious health problems. 'I used to eat junk food from plastic packets,' says Gillian. 'But now I'm more careful about what I eat.' Dr McKeith has studied Asian medicine and one thing that this has taught her is that you can find out about people's health by examining their tongues, eyes and fingernails. If you study these three parts of your body, they will show you if you eat a healthy diet or not. You can as well be a doctor yourself, and study someone else. Have a look at your friend's eyes, tongue and nails, and see if they match these descriptions. Then you can see how healthy your friend is.

A. Tongue

A healthy tongue should be smooth and moist and its colour should be pale red. If it is rough, or dry, or a different colour, these are signs of poor health. Another sign of bad health is when there are cracks in the tongue. Cracks may be of different kinds, and each kind of crack shows a different health problem. If there are cracks in the middle of the tongue, this means you have a weak digestive system - you do not digest food easily. And perhaps you might feel tired, and have little energy, in the middle of the day. In this case, Dr McKeith says:

- Learn how to 'combine' food. Eat several kinds of food in each meal.
- Eat soups and vegetable salads. These foods are easy to digest.
- Don't drink fizzy drinks like lemonade and Coke quickly.
- Don't drink liquids at mealtimes.

If you have horizontal cracks in your tongue, this means you need B vitamins, and that you have low energy. To solve this problem, Dr McKeith suggests that you should:

- Drink mint tea
- Try eating salads made of lettuce, parsley and spinach.
- Add vitamin B Complex (50mg a day) to your diet.
- Drink at least 1.5 litres of still water a day.

B. Eyes

Dark circles under the eyes are a sign of food allergies: your body doesn't want certain kinds of food. They also show that your kidneys are weak, and not doing their job well. To remedy this problem, Dr. McKeith says:

- Eat different food every day.
- Drink two glasses of fruit juice per day.
- Eat lots of fish, onions, beans and nuts.

C. Nails

If you can see white spots in your fingernails, you know that your body doesn't have enough zinc. You need to take action to raise the level of zinc. To do this, Dr. McKeith says:

- Eat pumpkin seeds and sunflower seeds as a snack between meals.
- Start taking one tablet of zinc daily.



3. Only five of these statements are true according to the information given in the text. Say the right answer.

| | True | False |
|---|------|-------|
| 1. A healthy tongue should be pale red in colour. | V | |
| 2. If you have dark circles under your eyes, it's good to drink juice. | | |
| 3. Cracking on the tongue means you have a weak kidney. | | |
| 4. For digestive system it's not good to drink fizzy drinks like Coke and lemonade. | | |
| 5. If you drink mint tea, you'll get B vitamins. | | |
| 6. White spots on the nails are the signs of food allergies. | | |
| 7. Eating pumpkin and sunflower seeds is good if you have low level of zinc. | | |

Vocabulary in Context



4. Read the phrases below and find their English equivalents in the text. Write the English equivalents in your notebooks.

- | | | |
|--|--------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. არაჯანსაღი საკვები <u>junk food</u> | 2. ზომების მიღება | 3. პიტნის ჩაი |
| 4. საჭმლის მომნელებელი სისტემა | 5. გაზიანი სასმელები | 8. პრობლემის მოგვარება |
| 6. აზიური მედიცინა | 7. ცუდი ხარისხის საჭმელი | |



5. Match the underlined words with their Georgian equivalents. The context in which they are used will help you.

- | | |
|--|--------------------|
| 1. A healthy tongue should be <u>moist</u> . | a. ოხრაბუმი |
| 2. Don't drink <u>liquids</u> at mealtimes. | b. დიეტოლოგი |
| 3. Try eating <u>lettuce</u> . | c. თუთია (Zn) |
| 4. Try eating <u>parsley</u> . | d. სასმელი წყალი |
| 5. Try <u>spinach</u> salad. | e. სველი, ნოტიო |
| 6. He has a weak <u>kidney</u> . | f. სითხე |
| 7. She is a world famous <u>nutritionist</u> . | g. სალათის ფოთლები |
| 8. Can I have some <u>still water</u> ? | h. ისპანახი |
| 9. one tablet of <u>zinc</u> | i. თირკმელი |



6. Read the text and complete the sentences in your notebooks with the words below. One word is extra.

digestive system fizzy junk food liquids low energy pale take action weight

Eat healthy food

Sally hadn't been eating very well. One day, at college, she suddenly felt sick. She was taken to a doctor, who asked her what she had been eating. Sally answered that she ate fast or junk food (1) like chips and hamburgers nearly every day. Sally put on _____ (2), and her skin was awful; She had many spots and she looked really _____ (3). She often took days off because she felt ill and had _____ (4). 'I'm always coming down with flue', she told the nurse. 'I'm not surprised', said the nurse, with all the food you eat and _____ (5) drinks, it's a miracle you aren't ill more often. Your _____ (6) must be really weak now. You should _____ (7) NOW and really keep a diet. You are what you eat after all.' Now Sally is exercising more and eating healthier food.

➔  | Listening

7. Before you listen to the recording try to translate the following words and phrases into Georgian. You might ask your teacher or your friends to help you.

I'm worried about... go/be on a diet... see a doctor... a full stomach... low-fat products... plain water... fizzy drinks... a healthy body... regular exercise builds your muscles... get rid of calories... jogging... make a difference... keep body in shape

8. Now listen to the interview with the world famous nutritionist – Steven Dowson. He speaks about the possible ways of building a healthy body. Which statements are true and which are false according to the recording?

1. Vegetables are as healthy as chips. F
2. It's not good to eat late at night. _____
3. It's useful to eat low-fat products. _____
4. It's better to drink fizzy drinks rather than drinking plain water. _____
5. If you do exercise regularly, you will feel and look better. _____
6. You'll feel better even if you jog once a year for an hour. _____
7. If you want to build a healthy body, spend less time in front of the TV. _____

9. Read this summary of the interview. Then listen to the interview again and complete the text below. You might need up to 4 words to insert in one gap.

Even without seeing a doctor, you can choose food that will keep you healthy (1). Instead of eating chips, try to eat a piece of fruit or some _____ (2). Try not to eat too much late at night and don't go to bed _____ (3). Dr. Dowson advises to buy milk products with _____ (4), like fat-free yogurt or Pepsi light. It's better to drink _____ (5) when you're thirsty. Fruit drinks have many calories and are not very healthy. Another thing to keep in mind is that _____ (6) can help you feel and look better. Regular exercise builds your muscles. Spend less time in front of _____ (7). Eat less snacks and get moving!

Grammar: Conditional 1

Look at the sentence:

- *If you eat fruits and vegetables, you will be healthier.*

This sentence refers to the future time and means that there is a possibility (at least 50%) that this will happen. The verb after *if* is Present Simple but it refers to the future (*If you eat fruits and vegetables... თუ ხილს და ბოსტნეულს შეჭამ ...*); the second half of the sentence has *will + verb* and it also refers to the future (*you will be healthier*: უფრო ჯანმრთელი იქნები). **This structure is called Conditional 1.**

More examples are:

- *She will feel more energetic if she drinks mint tea* - უფრო ენერგიულად იგრძნობს თავს, პიტნის ჩაის თუ დალევს.
- *You won't be healthy if you eat hamburgers every day* - თავს ჯანმრთელად ვერ იგრძნობ, თუ ყოველ დღე ჰამბურგერებს შეჭამ.

Remember: We use Conditional 1 (First Conditional) when we talk about future events or actions which are very likely to happen. The formula is: If + Present Simple + will/can

Work in small groups. Think about some possible future situations and try to make your own sentences using conditional 1. Can you think of interrogative and negative forms as well? Ask your teacher for help.



10. Put the verbs in the right form. Use Conditional 1.

1. If the train (be) late, we (walk). *If the train is late, we'll walk.*
2. I (call) you if I (have) time.
3. If the class (be) full, we (find) another one.
4. What you (do) if the taxi (not come)?
5. I (ask) Peter if I (see) him tomorrow.
6. I (go) to Istanbul next week if I (get) a plane ticket.
7. If he (call) me 'lazy' again I (get angry).



11. Look at the phrases below. Write two or three results for each action.

1. If I eat cakes and chocolates for snack, *I will put on weight.*
2. If I do more exercise
3. If I spend too much time in front of TV and computer
4. If I eat soups and salads
5. If I jog or go for a walk in the park every morning
6. If I eat too much fatty food

Action-oriented task: Write a letter of advice



Speaking



12.

What advice would you give to someone who: a. has put on a lot of weight? b. wants to know more about healthy food? c. has low energy during the day? Work with your partner and think together of at least 5 pieces of advice or recommendation tips you would give your friend.

Use Conditional 1. Start your advice with *If...*

E.g. If you do regular exercises, you'll lose some weight.



Now get ready to write



13. Read the letter which Tina, a 14-year-old teenager, wrote to the problem page of the students' magazine. Tina has some problems and seeks for advice. Write a reply letter to her and advise her what to do or what not to do. Write about 80-90 words.

Try to use some of these words and phrases:

junk, salty, low-fat, fat free, healthy food... / more plain water... / regular meals... / take action... / walk more... / do physical exercises... / eat less snacks... / less chocolate and sweets... / lose weight... / be on a diet.

Hi, I am Tina, 14. I am a bit overweight. I try not to eat much, but it doesn't help. Mum says I eat too much junk food, like chips and hamburgers. Can you give me some advice?

Hi Tina. I've read about your problem. I think that if...

➔  Reading



1. Choose one of the following statements and complete it giving your reason.

- a. I really enjoy shopping because
- b. I don't like shopping because



2. Now read the advert below. Then read the dialogue between the shop assistant and the customer and choose the correct answer to this question:

How many items of clothing did the customer buy? One Two Three

Pop in to see our wide selection of the latest fashions.
Buy one and get one half price!
Hurry! This offer won't last long!



It looks trendy

Shop Assistant: Can I help you?
Customer: Thanks. I heard you have some special offers, so I just popped in... This pair of leather trousers here. It looks really trendy. How much is it?
Shop As.: Let's see. It's 180 Laris.
Cust.: 180? It's beautiful of course, but I'm afraid it's much too expensive. I would buy it if it didn't cost so much.
Shop As.: I understand. it's not cheap really because it's a pair of designer trousers. How about these jeans?
Cust.: No, sorry. I don't like the colour. It's too dark.
Shop As.: I thought dark colour would suit you more, but that's all right. Here is a lighter one. What size do you wear?
Cust.: Medium, I think.
Shop As.: Here's a medium one. Would you like to try them on?
Cust.: OK. Where are the changing rooms?
Shop As.: They're over there. There! The jeans fit you perfectly.
Cust.: Well... I think they are a bit too tight for me.
Shop As.: Too tight? Absolutely not. It's just the right size. Loose clothes are not in fashion these days, you know.
Cust.: All right then. You win. I'll take them. How much are they?
Shop As.: 30 Laris. But we have a special offer for this holiday season. If you buy one you get another one half price. So perhaps you'd like to take advantage of this? Just choose something to go with these jeans and you'll get it half price.
Cust.: Ok. That's a good idea. I'll take this jumper then as well. It's lovely.
Shop As.: Are you going to pay by card or cash?
Cust.: I'd prefer cash please.....

3. Read the dialogue between the shop assistant and the customer again and answer the questions.

- How much is the pair of leather trousers? 180 Laris.
- Why are the leather trousers so expensive?
- What size is the customer?
- Where does the customer try the jeans on?
- What else is the customer buying?
- Why does the customer pay half price for the jumper?
- How does the customer prefer to pay?

4. Say who says these sentences: the customer (C) or the shop assistant (S).

| | | |
|--|---|--|
| 1. Can I help you? | S | |
| 2. What size do you wear? | | |
| 3. Would you like to try it on? | | |
| 4. How much is it? | | |
| 5. How about these jeans? | | |
| 6. Where are the changing rooms? | | |
| 7. You'd like to take advantage of.... | | |
| 8. Are you going to pay by card or cash? | | |

Vocabulary in Context

5. Read the words and phrases below and find their English equivalents in the advert and the dialogue. Write the English equivalents in your notebooks

- | | | |
|--------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. ცოტა ხნით შერბენა <u>pop in</u> | 2. ტყავის | 3. ჯინსები თქვენი ზომაა |
| 4. ვინრო, მოჭერილი | 5. ფართო, თავისუფალი (ტანსაცმელი) | 8. ნალდი ფული |
| 6. ტანსაცმლის ან ფეხსაცმლის გასინჯვა | 7. სარგებლობა | |
| 9. მომხმარებელი | 10. ეს ჯინსები მოგიხდებოდათ | |

6. Match the phrases under A with the phrases under B and write six sentences in your notebooks.

- | | |
|---|---------------------------------|
| A | B |
| 1. Why don't you pop in | a. to go swimming. |
| 2. I think red colour really | b. but they were too tight. |
| 3. She tried the shoes on | c. and see us this afternoon? |
| 4. The jacket fitted me well but | d. suits you. |
| 5. I feel more comfortable in | e. the trousers were too small. |
| 6. I took advantage of the good weather | f. loose clothes. |

7. Read the text and complete the sentences in your notebooks with the words from the box. One word is extra.

Last week...

Last week I decided to pop into (1) a new clothes shop which had just opened near my house. I thought I might buy a jacket which I had seen in the shop window on my way to school the day before. The first jacket I _____ (2) was too big. It didn't _____ (3) me. So I tried on another one, but that one was too _____ (4). I was disappointed of course and _____ (5) to leave. But, as I was going towards the door, the shop assistant showed me a third jacket. This one was a black _____ (6) jacket, just like the ones that rockers wear. I put it on and, when I looked at myself in the mirror, I just knew that it was the right one for me. I paid for it in _____ (7) and hurried home feeling really happy. Mum wasn't very pleased though. She doesn't think the jacket _____ (8) me at all. But that's only because she's old-fashioned.

- cash
- decided
- fit
- leather
- ~~pop into~~
- slim
- suits
- tight
- tried on

➔  Listening

8. You are going to listen to three radio adverts. Listen and write which of these products each one is advertising.

a mobile phone CDs shampoo

a key-holder hair gel a stereo radio

Advert 1:

Advert 2:

Advert 3:



9. Listen to the recording again and say the appropriate answer.

| Which product.... | CDs | hair gel | stereo radio |
|---|-----|----------|--------------|
| 1. can students buy at a cheaper price? | | | |
| 2. will make your hair look more beautiful? | | | |
| 3. has a special price which will last only one week? | | | |
| 4. can you buy for 2 Laris? | | | |
| 5. can be bought in the town centre? | | | |

Grammar: Conditional 2

Look at the sentence:

- *If I had money, I would buy a car.*

Of course, I don't have money. The sentence is my imagination. It imagines something which is not true. The verb after *if* is Past Simple, but it refers to the present (*If I had money*: ფული რომ მქონდეს); the second half of the sentence has *would + the verb* (*I would buy a car*: მანქანას ვიყიდდი). **This structure is called Conditional 2.**

More examples are:

- *If these shoes were* cheaper, I would buy them*: ეს ფეხსაცმელები უფრო იაფი რომ იყოს, ვიყიდდი.
- *If I had time I would go shopping*: დრო რომ მქონდეს, საყიდლებზე წავიდოდი.
- *If it didn't rain, we could go out*: რომ არ წვიმდეს, გარეთ გავიდოდით.

Remember: We use Conditional 2 (Second Conditional) when we talk about “unreal” and “imaginary” situations. The formula is: If + Past Simple + would/could/might

Please note: *I would= I'd; you would=you'd, etc.*

Work in small groups. Think about some unreal situations and try to make your own sentences using Conditional 2. Ask your teacher for help. Try to find some examples of Conditional 2 in the dialogue, ex. 2 as well.

10. Choose and say the correct word or phrase in each sentence. Then translate the sentences into Georgian.

1. If I *had/have* a lot of money, I'd give some to my friends. ბევრი ფული რომ მქონდეს, ჩემს მეგობრებს მივცემდი.
2. He *would/will* go out more, if he had more free time.
3. If I will *study/studied* harder, I would get better marks.
4. If it didn't rain, we *will/would* go swimming.
5. Martha would have a dog if she *didn't/doesn't* live in a flat.
6. She wouldn't be so fat if she *wouldn't/didn't* eat so much.
7. If the watch *isn't/wasn't* so expensive, I'd buy it.

11. Read the text and put the verbs into the correct form.

Where would you like to be in the world?

If I (1) c o u l d b e (can/be) anywhere in the world now, I (2) _____ (be) in Brazil. I (3) _____ (spend) all my time on a beautiful white sandy beach. I (4) _____ (swim) in the clear blue sea and the weather (5) _____ (be) really hot. I (6) _____ (eat) different kinds of delicious ice-cream all day long and I (7) _____ (drink) refreshing ice-cold drinks as well. If I (8) _____ (can/take) a couple of my friends with me, I (9) _____ (ask) Sandro and Maya to come along. Three of us (10) _____ (have) a fantastic time together. But I'm afraid we (11) _____ (not/like) to come back home.



Action-oriented task: Discuss shopping habits

➡  **Speaking**

12.

Work with your partner.
Find out if your friend enjoys shopping, how often he/she goes shopping, if he/she goes shopping alone or with somebody else. Ask if your partner knows the place where you can buy the trendiest clothes or tasty food for your family. When you have finished, report what you have found out about your friend to the whole class. Try to use some of the following phrases:

I love shopping because I like buying new things / I hate shopping because it takes so much time / I'm not a good shopper / I usually spend my pocket money on ... / I always wait to buy my clothes in the sales / There's a big selection of food at the market / We usually buy food at our local food market / bazaar.

➡  **Now get ready to write**

13. Imagine that you have 100 Laris and you want to buy something (clothes, food, a book, a CD...) with it. In your paragraph use Conditional 2 and write what you would buy, why you would buy it, where you would buy it, how you would use it.

Write between 60-80 words.
Begin your paragraph with the sentence:

If I had 100 Laris, I would



Reading



1. Read the shopping guide. Then choose the correct ending to the sentence below.

This shopping guide is useful for people who:

- a. would like to buy clothes
- b. would like to buy souvenirs or works of art
- c. would like to buy food

Shopping guide

Georgian Arts Store

The **Georgian Arts and Culture Centre Store** has a wonderful selection of traditional Georgian crafts at reasonable prices. It includes ceramics, carpets, icons, hand-knitted socks, hats and traditional dolls. The most interesting items of the **Georgian Arts Store and Culture Centre Store** are silver and gold covered copies of jewellery from the Georgian State Museum treasury.

Address: 209 Chavchavadze Avenue, Tbilisi.

Dry Bridge Flea Art Market

On one side of the bridge you can find antiques such as silver, crystal jewellery or statues. On the other side, there is an open-air art market where you can buy paintings and other crafts directly from the artists. Prices are reasonable.

Address: Dry Bridge, Embankment, Tbilisi.

The Art Salon Khelovani

Art Salon Khelovani, where famous Georgian artists and folk art masters often meet, is the place, where their artworks are exhibited for popularization and sale. Here you can buy any works of fine and applied arts at very affordable prices. The art salon sells ceramic, graphic, metal art works and jewellery. The salon takes orders to any tastes and themes.

The Khelovani opened 15 years ago and has maintained a good reputation since then.

Address: 94 Machabeli Str. Tbilisi.

Tel: 15 725

Central Gallery of Antique Carpets

Our gallery-shop, which has a ten-year history, is in Tbilisi's oldest district near *Dry Bridge*. Here you can find Georgian carpets which are famous for their original designs. Georgian history and spirit are represented in the figures and symbols. You can see a rich collection of old hand-made carpets from Iran, Azerbaijan, Dagestan and Armenia. We have been collecting them for years, from mountainous regions and villages.

Address: Peikrebi Str. Tbilisi

Tel: 11 22 3

2. Read the shopping guide again and say the correct answers. In some cases there is more than one answer.

| Where.... | Georgian Arts Store | Dry Bridge Flea Market | Art Salon Khelovani | Central Gallery of Antique carpets |
|---|---------------------|------------------------|---------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1. can you buy crafts straight from the artists? | | ✓ | | |
| 2. can you find carpets from all over the Caucasus? | | | | |
| 3. do they offer things at reasonable prices? | | | | |
| 4. can you buy some items of clothing? | | | | |
| 5. can you buy copies of jewellery from the Georgian State Museum treasury? | | | | |
| 6. do well-known Georgian artists and folk art masters meet? | | | | |

Vocabulary in Context

3. Match the expressions with their Georgian equivalents. The context in which they are used in the text will help you.

- | | | |
|--|--|---|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 1. crafts 2. ceramics 3. icons 4. treasury 5. antiques 6. crystal 7. works of fine and applied arts 8. reasonable/affordable prices | | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. კერამიკა b. ანტიკვარული ნივთები c. საგანძური d. ბროლი / ბროლის e. ხელმისაწვდომი ფასები f. ხატები g. ხელნაკეთი საგნები h. ნატიფი და გამოყენებითი ხელოვნების ნიმუშები |
|--|--|---|

4. Complete the table in your notebooks. Then make the same table in Georgian.

| | | | | | | |
|-----------|-------------|--------|-----------|-------------|------|----------|
| Noun | tradition | reason | | | fame | mountain |
| Adjective | traditional | | wonderful | interesting | | |

5. Read about Masho's Art Salon and complete the sentences in your notebooks with the words from the box. There are two extra words which you do not need to use.

Masho's Art Salon

You'll be surprised to find such a wide variety of Georgian jewellery and c r a f t s (1) in this cosy small shop. You won't _____ (2) any antiques here as most items are made by modern Georgian _____ (3) and craftsmen. It's the right place to _____ (4) if you're looking for souvenirs or presents. However, it's not easy to choose from the numerous works of fine and applied _____ (5). Helpful shop assistants will help you to choose a beautiful bowl or pot from their wonderful collection of _____ (6). Here you will also find traditional _____ (7) and dolls which you can buy at quite _____ (8) prices. The shop is located in the old district of Tbilisi – 15 Liberty Str. Tbilisi

- arts
- artists
- carpets
- ~~crafts~~
- ceramics
- crystal
- find
- icon
- reasonable
- visit

➔  | Listening

6. Read the conversation between a shop assistant and a customer below and try to complete the sentences with the right words. Then, listen to the recording and see how many words you guessed correctly.

A customer is trying on shoes in a shoe shop.

Customer: No, I'm afraid they don't quite fit. Could I try another pair, please?

Shop Assistant: Of course, madam.

Cust.: Yes, these fit (1) quite nicely, but I don't think this shade of red really _____ (2) me. What do you think?

Shop As.: I think the colour suits you very well, madam.

Cust.: I'm afraid, I'm giving you a lot of _____ (3).

Shop As.: Oh no, madam. Not at all.

Cust.: ... but I think I'd like to try that _____ (4) over there.

Shop As.: But you've _____ (5) tried those on, madam.

Cust.: Well, I think I'll try them again just to _____ (6) sure.

Shop As.: Very well, madam.

Cust.: No, I was right the first time. They _____ (7) me very well, but they don't quite _____ (8).

Shop As.: No, madam.

Grammar: Wishes

Look at the sentences:

- *I wish I could fly (but I can't).*
- *I wish I had a car (but I don't).*

The speaker in these sentences expresses wish. This is the wish about the present. As you see from the examples, to express wish we go one tense back. This means that we use Past Simple to express

Present: *I wish I had a car.* More examples are:

- *I wish it wasn't so cold here:* ნეტა აქ ასე არ ციოდე.
- *I wish I had an art salon:* ნეტა ხელოვნების სალონი მქონდე.

So, for present wishes we use I wish + Past Simple.: (*I wish I knew French:* ნეტა ფრანგული ვიცოდე.) **or Past Progressive** (*I wish I was driving to Batumi now:* ნეტა ეხლა ბათუმში მივდიოდე). **In both sentences Past refers to the present, not past - the same as in Conditional 2.**

After wish we can use were in all persons. I wish I were thinner.

Can you think of the rule for negative forms? Ask your teacher or your friends for help.

➔
7. Read the sentences and write wishes as in the example. Write the sentences in your notebooks.

1. You can't swim. You say: "*I wish I could swim.*"
2. You can't find your English book. You say: " _____ "
3. You are afraid of dogs. You say: " _____ "
4. You want to go on holiday but you can't afford it. You say: " _____ "
5. You have so much homework to do. You say: " _____ "
6. You don't have any free time. You say: " _____ "

8. Here's a text about John Robinson and his wishes. Read the text and complete the sentences with the correct forms of the verbs.

John Robinson's wishes

John Robinson (1) lives (live) in a small old house in the country. He doesn't like it there. He feels lonely and unhappy. He wishes he (2) _____ (live) in a nice flat in the town. He wishes he (3) _____ (not/feel) so lonely. He wishes he (4) _____ (stay) where he lived earlier. He doesn't work. If he (5) _____ (have) a job, he could save some money. "I wish I (6) _____ (have) a good education," he says. He has some advice for young people. "If I (7) _____ (be) you, I'd study harder," he says to young people.

Action-oriented task: Write a message

Speaking

Work in groups of 3 or 4.

Read the two holiday adverts below and decide where you would prefer to go if you could. Discuss your choice with your partner using Conditional 2 and sentences with 'I wish...'

Skiing in Austria

- Travel by train
- Skiing facilities
- Beautiful views of mountains
- Delicious Austrian food
- Heated swimming pool



Package holidays in Hawaii

- Travel by plane
- Comfortable hotel rooms
- Rooms with a view of the sea
- English food served daily
- Beautiful beaches



Use some of the expressions below.

If I had money I would ... / I wish I could go to .. because... / I wish I could stay in ... / I wish I could swim in... / If I went to / I would...

E.g. *If I had money I would go to Hawaii because I like swimming in the sea.*
If I went on holiday in Austria, I would have a chance to ski in the Alps.

Now get ready to write

10. Read the situation below, then in your notebooks write a letter using Conditional 2 and wish-sentences.

- You are on a small island somewhere in the Pacific Ocean.
- You feel lonely. There is no one to talk to.
- You lost your watch, so you don't know what time it is.
- There is nothing to eat except fish, and you don't like it.
- You regret you went there and think that it wasn't a very good idea.

Dear Anyone,

I'm on an island somewhere in the Pacific Ocean. I wish

.....

.....

I hope someone will reply.

↓

1. Put the verbs into the correct form. Use Conditional 1 and 2.

1. What would you do if you w o n (win) a lottery?
2. If you buy some eggs, I _____ (bake) a cake.
3. If you _____ (take) more exercise, you would feel healthier.
4. If people used bikes instead of cars, there _____ (not/be) so much pollution.
5. I'll call the police if the neighbours _____ (not/stop) shouting.
6. If I were you, I _____ (not/tell) anyone about it.
7. If the Chinese restaurant isn't open, we _____ (go) for a pizza.
8. What would you do if you _____ (meet) someone very famous.
9. We'll go swimming if it _____ (not/rain) tomorrow.
10. If he _____ (drink) too much coffee, he won't be able to sleep.
11. If we take a taxi, we _____ (not/be) late.
12. I _____ (buy) this watch if it weren't so expensive.

↓

2. Choose the correct word or phrase in each sentence.

1. It is raining. I wish I *have/ h a d* an umbrella with me.
2. I like your school. I wish I *went / would go* there too.
3. It rains a lot here. I wish it not *rained / didn't rain* so often.
4. I wish I *can / could* speak better.
5. I wish I *knew / would know* the answer to this question.
6. I wish Dato didn't *sit / doesn't sit* next to me. He's so noisy.
7. I'm not a good swimmer, but I wish I *could / would swim* well.
8. I wish I don't *have to / didn't have to* go to school on Saturdays.
9. I wish *to be / I were* taller.
10. I wish I *didn't have / hadn't* so much homework to do.
11. I'm having a wonderful time here in London. I wish you *would be / were* here.
12. I wish you *didn't tell / told* lies.

↓

3. Read the sentences and put the verbs into the Present Simple or Future Simple.

1. When I s e e (see) her, I w i l l t e l l (tell) her your news.
2. Let's run home before it _____ (rain).
3. As soon as we _____ (be) ready, we _____ (phone) you.
4. Please wait here until Mr. Brown _____ (come) back.
5. By the time Levan _____ (arrive), the match _____ (be) over.
6. Please take a seat until the dentist _____ (be) ready.
7. When you _____ (grow) older you _____ (change) your mind about it.
8. I _____ (not/leave) until you _____ (give) me the money.
9. As soon as the taxi _____ (arrive), I _____ (let) you know.
10. Before we _____ (meet) again, I _____ (write) to you.
11. Please _____ (not/leave) until I _____ (come) back.
12. As soon as I _____ (get) to London, I _____ (send) you an email.



4. Complete the sentences in your notebooks with the appropriate phrase. There is one extra phrase which you don't need to use.

fizzy drinks still water digestive system pop in ~~junk food~~
 personal experience reasonable price sour cream milk products
 take advantage Asian medicine freshly ground tried ... on

1. Eating too much junk food is not good for your health.
2. I need to _____ the supermarket for a second.
3. The doctor advised me to drink at least 1.5 litres of _____ a day.
4. My friend wrote a story about climbing based on his _____.
5. Some people think that _____ helps you to stay healthy.
6. I'll _____ of the 50% discount and buy some new shoes.
7. If you have problems with the _____ you should eat soups and vegetable salads.
8. I love the smell of _____ coffee.
9. Here you can buy good quality furniture at a very _____.
10. When the omelette is ready, pour in some _____.
11. I prefer orange juice to _____ like Cola.
12. She _____ the dress _____ but it was too short for her.



5. How many words do you know? In your notebooks write the Georgian translation next to each word. Then check the meaning in the Wordlist at the end of the book. Count the correct answers and write the number. All the words are from units 17-20.

Out of 30 words I know _____.

- | | | |
|-----------------------------|----------------|-------------|
| 1. healthy <u>ჯანმრთელი</u> | 2. crystal | 3. salty |
| 4. tongue | 5. fingernails | 6. antiques |
| 7. cash | 8. lettuce | 9. serve |
| 10. stir | 11. mint | 12. kidneys |
| 13. spinach | 14. preheat | 15. dough |
| 16. nutritionist | 17. customer | 18. recipe |
| 19. pale | 20. sprinkle | 21. peel |
| 22. leather | 23. tight | 24. loose |
| 25. suit | 26. fit | 27. icons |
| 28. ceramics | 29. treasury | 30. crafts |



Reading



1. With your partner spend a few minutes to answer the questions below.

- Do you live in a city, a town or a village? What is it famous for?



2. Now read the texts about three cities. Try to understand the meaning of the underlined words. The context will help you.

Rome

Two thousand years ago Rome was the centre of a huge empire. Today it is only the capital of a single country - Italy, but it is still one of Europe's most beautiful and historic cities. Two of its many unique sights are the Coliseum and the Vatican. The Emperor Vespasian built the enormous arena of the Coliseum in the first century. On average 65,000 people came to watch a range of violent sports there. For example, soldiers called "Gladiators" fought each other with swords and nets, or lions attacked Christian prisoners. Sometimes there were even sea-battles. When this happened, the floor of the Coliseum was flooded. Today the Coliseum is the international symbol of Rome. The Vatican is in Rome, but it's also the smallest independent state in the world. It is the heart of Roman Catholicism and consists of churches, galleries, palaces, libraries and museums. Its main attraction for many visitors is the ceiling of the Sistine Chapel. This was painted by Michelangelo in the early sixteenth century and is one of the world's greatest art masterpieces.



Istanbul



Situated where Europe and Asia meet, Istanbul is a busy port full of mosques, markets, palaces and museums. It is not the Turkish capital - that's Ankara - but it is the largest city in the country with a population of over 16 million. This fascinating city of great contrasts has a long history of over 2500 years. One of the city's highlights is definitely Hagia (Aya) Sophia. It is one of the world's most beautiful buildings first built by the Roman emperor Constantine the Great. That was in the 4th century and in those days it was a Christian church. In 1453 after the fall of the Byzantine Empire, Mehmet II changed it into a Muslim mosque. Then, 500 years after that, in 1935, it became a museum. In 2020, it re-opened as a mosque. Now, Aya Sophia is full of both Christian and Muslim treasures and is visited by millions of people from all over the world. Another of Istanbul's more modern highlights is the Bosphorus Bridge. The Bosphorus itself is a narrow strait, 30 kilometers long, which separates Europe from Asia. The Bosphorus Bridge is 34m wide and 1500m long and this makes it the longest in Europe.

Batumi

Located in the west of Georgia and situated about 20 kilometres from the Turkish border, Batumi is a port on the Black sea coast and also, one of Georgia's most popular holiday resorts - an attractive sea-side town visited by thousands of holiday-makers. The town center is not very big and can be covered on foot. In fact, you will be able to see and feel the heart of Batumi only by wandering down the narrow streets. Batumi looks towards the sea on one side and towards high impressive mountains on the other. For this reason, the town's location cannot leave any visitor indifferent. After being occupied by Greek merchants in the 5th and 4th centuries BC, the coast of Ajara later came under the Roman rule. Bathus (the present-day Batumi) and Apsaros (modern Gonio) were fortresses at that time. In the 2nd century AD, Bathus was an important military base for the Roman army. Gonio Fortress which is in ruins now is proof of the Roman presence in the area. Today Batumi is famous for its seaside boulevard with big palm trees along its sides, a rich botanical garden, inviting outdoor cafés and a wide area going down to the beach where you can sit and watch the sun set over the Black Sea.



3. Read the sentences and say which are true and which are false according to the information given in the texts above.

1. Batumi is situated on the Caspian Sea coast. No
2. People came to the Coliseum to watch fights and battles.
3. The Vatican is the smallest independent state in the world.
4. Istanbul is the capital of Turkey.
5. Aya Sophia was once a Christian Orthodox Church.
6. The Bosphorus Bridge is the longest in Europe.
7. Batumi was ruled by Romans in the 4th century BC.

4. Which city is it? Read the texts again. Choose and say the appropriate answer.

| Which city... | Rome | Istanbul | Batumi |
|---|------|----------|--------|
| 1. has several millions of inhabitants? | | ✓ | |
| 2. is a popular summer resort? | | | |
| 3. has a very impressive location? | | | |
| 4. was once the centre of the most powerful empire? | | | |
| 5. is bigger than the capital of the country? | | | |
| 6. was founded over 2500 years ago? | | | |

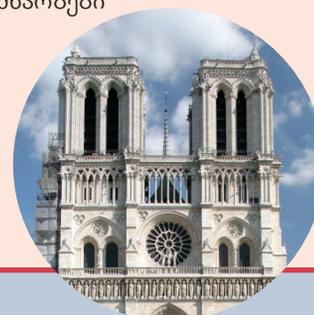
Vocabulary in Context

5. For each word or phrase below find the word in the texts which has a similar meaning. Not all the words are underlined in the texts.

- 1. filled with water flooded
- 2.a place where Muslims go to pray
- 3.attractive
- 4.uninterested
- 5.a big old wall

6. Read the words and phrases below and find their English equivalents in the texts. Write the English equivalents in your notebooks.

- 1. უნიკალური ღირსშესანიშნავი ადგილები unique sights
- 2. უზარმაზარი არენა
- 3. ხელოვნების შედეგები
- 4. ქალაქის ღირსშესანიშნაობები
- 5. ქრისტიანული მართლმადიდებლური ეკლესია
- 6. ვინრო სრუტე
- 7. შთაბეჭდავი მთები



7. Read this text about Paris, the capital of France, and complete the sentences in your notebooks with the words from the box. There are two extra words. One example is given.

Paris - the city of light

The Eiffel Tower is still the best-known symbol of the 'City of Light.' However, it's no longer the number one tourist attraction in Paris. Now it's the Pompidou Centre, which is a museum of the twentieth-century art (1). The Pompidou Centre is one of three museums which are city _____ (2), the other two being the Musee d'Orsay and the Louvre. The Musee d'Orsay, now one of the city's unique _____ (3), used to be a railway station. As for the Louvre, it was a royal palace for over 300 years. But now it's the home of _____ (4) of art such as the Mona Lisa by Leonardo da Vinci and many many more. Louvre has an entrance, in the shape of an _____ (5) pyramid made of glass, designed by the American architect I.M. Pei. The glass pyramid in front of the Louvre is one of the most _____ (6) structures in Paris. We can end our short tour with a visit to Notre Dame, the _____ (7) 12th century cathedral which is built on an island in the river Seine.

- ~~art~~
- highlights
- enormous
- fascinating
- impressive
- indifferent
- masterpieces
- mosques
- sights



Listening

8. You are going to listen to a guide speaking about Tbilisi. Look at the words and phrases below and choose the ones you think you will hear. After listening see how many you guessed correctly. Out of 11 words and phrases given you will hear only 8.

- city highlights hunting legend masterpieces Muslim mosque Orthodox churches
 pheasant sword synagogue unique sights warm spring

9. Listen to the recording again and complete the sentences in your notebooks.

1. The city was f o u n d e d in the 5th century.
2. The king decided to found the city on the _____.
3. You can get a very beautiful _____ of the city if you climb...
4. You will _____ notice the colossal statue of the country's matriarch.
5. In no other place will you see a _____, an Armenian church...
6. Many of these religious structures contain superb paintings and architecture and are all _____ (7) visiting.

Grammar: Comparing adverbs

Look at the sentences:

- Nika is a careful driver. Nika drives carefully.

What is the difference between careful and carefully? Which is an adverb and which is an adjective? Look at the grammar section of Unit 4 to remember, or ask your teacher.

Most adverbs form their comparatives and superlatives with **more** and **most**.

- If you speak more clearly, we will hear you better. Tina works the most quickly.

Adverbs with the same form as adjectives, such as **fast, hard, early, late, long, high, cold** form their comparatives with **-er** and **-est**.

- I can run fast, but Dato can run faster. He'll have to work harder if he wants to pass his exam.

When we compare actions we put an auxiliary at the end of the sentence.

- Ann plays better than Mary does. (not Mary plays). Ann plays better than Mary is also possible.

For comparing adjectives we can also use: **as + adverb + as** in positive and interrogative sentences and **not as (or not so) + adverb + as** in negative sentences.

- I got here as fast as I could. Gia didn't do as well in the exam as he had hoped.

Adverbs, which form their degrees the same way as adjectives are: **much- more - most, little- less - least, badly-worse-worst, well-better-best**.

10. Write the comparative and superlative forms of the adverbs.

- | | | | |
|--------------|----------------|---------------------|----------------|
| 1. early | <u>earlier</u> | <u>the earliest</u> | 6. beautifully |
| 2. carefully | | | 7. high |
| 3. lonely | | | 8. well |
| 4. hard | | | 9. badly |
| 5. seriously | | | 10. late |

11. Read the first sentence. Then in your notebooks write the second sentence so that it means the same as the first. You can use 2 to 4 words to complete each sentence.

1. He looks angrier than I do. I don't look as angry as he does.
2. I run faster than Niko. Niko doesn't _____ I do.
3. They arrived later than we expected. They didn't arrive _____ expected.
4. George is the best story teller in the world. Nobody in the world tells _____ George.
5. Lika works just as hard as Lela. Lela doesn't _____ Lika.
6. I haven't eaten as much as you have. You've eaten _____ I have.

12. Read Sandro's email to Gio and choose the correct answer.

Hi Gio,

I know you'll be happy/happily (1) to hear that our team didn't do too bad/badly (2) in the championships - we came fourth. Of course, we had hoped to do best/better (3) but we certainly could have done a lot worst/worse (4). If we try a bit harder/more hardly (5) next year we might even come first. Anyway, let's hope for better/the best (6).

Write back soon.
Sandro

Action-oriented task: Write a description



Speaking

13.

With your partner talk about the advantages and disadvantages of living in YOUR city, town or village. Tell each other what you like about the place you live in, what you don't like, and what you would change to make it a better place to live in. You can talk about the traffic, pollution, weather, crime, people, places to go, such as cafés, cinemas.... Remember: a town is smaller than a city and larger than a village.

You might use some of these phrases:

The traffic is terrible / we have traffic jams / the pollution is very bad / People are very friendly here / There are not many things to do and places to go / It's a very boring place / It's very hot and sunny in the summer, but the winter is very cold.....



Now get ready to write

14. Write a description of your city, town or village. Use the ideas and phrases from the speaking activity. You can also use the following phrases:

The place I live in is called It's famous for

There are some problems in my city/town. For example...
This is probably the only place in the world which has / where you can / where there are.....

LET'S GO ON A CITY TOUR

Grammar focus: Future Continuous

➔  Reading

1. *Giorgi is staying with his English friend, Simon, in London. Giorgi goes on a tour of the best-known places in London. The next morning at breakfast Simon asks him about the tour. Read the dialogue between Giorgi and Simon. Choose and say the places that Giorgi has seen in London. One place is extra.*

London Bridge Westminster Abbey Buckingham Palace
 The British Museum The Tower St Paul's Cathedral



Simon: How was the sightseeing tour, Giorgi? How did you like London?
Giorgi: It's a fantastic city!
Simon: Were you able to see what you wanted?
Giorgi: I saw a lot, but we didn't have enough time to see more.
Simon: What else did you want to see?
Giorgi: I wanted to visit the British Museum.
Simon: Spending an hour at the British Museum wouldn't make much difference. There are so many things there and you need several days to see them all.
Giorgi: That's exactly what the tour guide said. We had to choose between a museum tour and a city tour, so we chose the city tour.
Simon: I think you made the right decision. At the British Museum you can see a few masterpieces, but you can't feel the atmosphere of the city.
Giorgi: Yes, and anyway the whole of London is just like a big open-air museum. There's London Bridge, Westminster Abbey, the Tower, St Paul's Cathedral, Big Ben..... We saw them all from the top of a double-decker bus.
Simon: I'm sure you did. And a bus ride can be very enjoyable, especially on a lovely day like yesterday.
Giorgi: It can be quite exciting, too. Every time we went round a corner, I held onto my seat!
Simon: Why? What was wrong?
Giorgi: Nothing was wrong. But it felt as if we were going the wrong way, and I thought we would crash into the traffic coming towards us.
Simon: Oh, I see. That's because you haven't got used to traffic driving on the left.
Giorgi: That's right. We drive on the right in Georgia, so it's quite unusual for me. I suppose it's like one of those traditions you've kept for centuries, like the changing of the guard in front of Buckingham Palace. I took some pictures of the soldiers in their red uniforms.
Simon: Really? Talking about pictures, I would like to give you this book about Britain. It'll be a souvenir of your holidays.
Giorgi: Oh, thanks. That's really kind of you! And it has pictures of Scotland. That's exactly what I need for our trip tomorrow. This time tomorrow I'll be walking in the streets of Edinburgh!

2. *Now read the dialogue more carefully and decide if the sentences below are true or false. Choose and say the right answer.*

| | Yes | No |
|---|-----|----|
| 1. Giorgi liked the city very much. | V | |
| 2. Simon is also a tourist. | | |
| 3. Giorgi wanted to see the National Gallery. | | |
| 4. Giorgi had a camera with him. | | |
| 5. Simon gives Giorgi a present. | | |
| 6. Giorgi is staying in London for two more days. | | |
| 7. Giorgi thinks it's a good idea to drive on the left. | | |

3. Read the dialogue again and find the answers to the questions below.

1. Why didn't Giorgi go on a museum tour? *Because they didn't have enough time.*
2. Why does Giorgi compare London to an open-air museum?
3. What was the weather like on the day of the tour?
4. What can't Giorgi get used to?
5. What kind of present does Giorgi get?
6. Which part of Britain is Giorgi visiting next?

Vocabulary in Context

4. Read the sentences below, remember the context in which the underlined words and phrases are used in the dialogue. Choose and write the Georgian equivalents.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. We went on a <u>sightseeing tour</u> . | a. დიდ განსხვავებას არ მოცემს |
| 2. It wouldn't <u>make much difference</u> . | b. მუზეუმი ღია ცის ქვეშ |
| 3. I think he has <u>made the right decision</u> . | c. ორსართულიანი ავტობუსი |
| 4. We went to an <u>open-air museum</u> . | d. ექსკურსიამძღოლი |
| 5. We got on a <u>double-decker bus</u> . | e. შეეჯახნენ |
| 6. They <u>crashed</u> into the wall. | f. ღირსშესანიშნავი ადგილების დასათვალიერებელი ექსკურსია |
| 7. Our <u>tour guide</u> in Rome spoke perfect English. | g. სწორი გადაწყვეტილება მიიღო |

5. In your notebook change the sentences below so that they mean the opposite. You can find the opposites of the underlined words and phrases in the dialogue between Giorgi and Simon.

1. It would make a big difference. *It wouldn't make much difference.*
2. I think you made the wrong decision.
3. At the museum you can see lots of masterpieces.
4. The bus ride was really boring.
5. The weather was awful yesterday.
6. We stood at the bottom of the hill.



6. Read Giorgi's letter to his parents and complete the sentences in your notebooks with the words from the box. There are two extra words that you do not need to use.

centre crash double-decker bus fantastic get used to
 guide open-air sights sightseeing visit

Dear Mum and Dad,

I've just had two wonderful days in London. It's a f a n t a s t i c (1) city. Yesterday we looked around the city _____ (2) and then we went on a _____ (3) tour. We saw all the _____ (4) of the city from the top of a _____ (5). I also wanted to _____ (6) the British Museum, but there wasn't enough time. Anyway, London itself is a kind of _____ (7) museum. There's one problem, though. I can't _____ (8) the traffic - they drive on the left! Tomorrow we're going to Scotland. We're going to spend two days in Edinburgh. I can't wait!

Lots of love,
 Giorgi

P.S. I'm attaching a photo of the Tower bridge which I took myself.



Listening

7. You are going to listen to a dialogue at a train station. Before you listen, choose and say the phrases you think you will hear. Then listen and check if you were right. Note that out of 6 phrases given you will hear only 4.

single or return you're welcome here you are excuse me the next train a two-hour journey



8. Listen to the dialogue at the train station again and write short answers to these questions in your notebooks.

1. Where does the girl want to go? To Liverpool
2. Does she want a single or a return ticket?
3. How much is the ticket?
4. Which platform does the train leave from?
5. How long is the journey?
6. What time does the train arrive in Liverpool?

Grammar: Future Continuous

Look at the sentences:

- This time tomorrow I will be walking in the streets of Edinburgh .
- This time next week I will be eating lunch on the plane.

will be walking and will be eating are the Future Continuous forms of the verbs walk and eat.

Future Continuous is used when we imagine an activity in progress in the future. We often use it to say what we will be doing in the future. There is nearly always a time expression, such as: *this time tomorrow/ next week/month/year, in five years' time, soon, at 2 o'clock tomorrow.*

Future Simple can sometimes be used instead of Future Continuous with no significant difference in meaning.

- He will be visiting London at the end of the month = He will visit London at the end of the month.

Note that contracted forms are often used: *I will be = I'll be; He will stay = He'll stay*

Can you write the rule for affirmative, negative and interrogative forms of Future Continuous? Ask your teacher or your friend for help.



9. Read the text about a very strange school called the Seven Seas and complete the sentences with the Future Continuous form of the verbs.

The Seven Seas

The Seven Seas is a very unusual school. It is a large boat where up to eight pupils from twelve to fifteen years old live and learn. When the school year starts in Britain, the ship (1) will already be sailing (sail) from Southampton for the Brazilian port of Belem. The whole journey will take a year. On the way, the Seven Seas (2) _____ (stop) at different ports in the Caribbean. The students (3) _____ (go) on several day trips to places of interest on the Caribbean islands. On board there will also be five highly qualified teachers, who (4) _____ (teach) them different school subjects. The students (5) _____ (also/do) a project on a topic of their choice. In addition to their academic studies, the students (6) _____ (take part) in various sporting activities.

10. What will the journey be like according to the text in ex.9? What will the students be doing? Rewrite the sentences using the Future Continuous.

1. I'm sure the children will have a great time. The children will be having a great time.
2. All the pupils will study for three hours a day.
3. I'm sure the children will eat some strange food.
4. I'm sure the children will see lots of exotic animals in the Amazon.
5. The children will visit lots of interesting places.
6. The children will learn lots of new things on the boat.

Action-oriented task: Write a postcard

Speaking

11.

Work in small groups.
 Ask your friends about the last holiday they went on. Find out where they went, who they went with, what sites they liked most, how long they stayed, what the weather was like, what they liked best about the holiday and also what they didn't enjoy much. Report the answers to the whole group.

Use at least 5 out of the expressions given below.

It was a fantastic holiday / I spent two great weeks in... / We had a lot of fun... / It was the right decision... / There was one problem / The weather was ... / There was just one thing I didn't like..... / The food wasn't... / It didn't make much difference... / I couldn't get used to...

Now get ready to write

12. Imagine you are a foreign tourist visiting Georgia. Write a postcard to your family about your holiday. Complete the postcard below. Use Giorgi's letter to his parents as an example (ex. 6).

| | |
|--|--|
| <p>Dear Mum and Dad,</p> <p>I've just had a week in ____.</p> <p>It's a great place! Yesterday we went on a tour.</p> <p>We saw ____ and ____</p> <p>I also wanted to see ____, but there wasn't ____.</p> <p>Tomorrow we ____.</p> <p>I can't wait!!!</p> <p>Love,</p> <p>_____</p> | <div style="border: 1px solid green; width: 60px; height: 60px; margin-bottom: 10px;"></div> <p>To: _____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> |
|--|--|

➔  Reading



1. What do you know about the Georgian Olympic Champions Nona Gaprindashvili, Lasha Talakhadze, Lasha Bekauri and Nino Salukvadze? Match the names with their sports.

| | |
|---------------------|------------------|
| Nona Gaprindashvili | weightlifting |
| Lasha Talakhadze | Olympic shooting |
| Lasha Bekauri | chess |
| Nino Salukvadze | judo |



2. Now read what two of these sportspeople say about their achievements and check if you were right.

Nona Gaprindashvili

“I was born in the western Georgian city of Zugdidi, in a family of six children. I was the only girl with 5 brothers. As there were few girls in the neighborhood, I grew up playing games with boys and competed equally with them. My father enjoyed playing chess. It was from him that we all learned to play this game and grew to love it. In fact, we often organized chess tournaments at home. When I was twelve years old, we found out by chance that the Georgian youth team championship would soon be taking place in Batumi. Because there were no female players from our town, I was offered a chance to play for our team. As I was pretty successful, a famous Georgian trainer noticed me and advised my parents to move to Tbilisi so that I could dedicate myself seriously to chess. I had a strong will and was determined to reach my goals. Two years later, I earned the second place in the Georgian Championship, and from 1956 onward, I was winning most of the tournaments in which I participated. I beat world records which include being a five-time world champion as well as winning 25 medals in the Women’s Chess Olympiads. I successfully competed in men’s tournaments and I was the first woman to win the title of International Grandmaster in 1978. To be honest, I cannot imagine my life without chess.”



Lasha Talakhadze

“All I knew as a child about weightlifting was that my father did the sport. He was a very strong athlete himself and had a great passion for weightlifting. Soon we started practising together. At that time, I had no idea I’d follow in his footsteps. Dad helped me a lot and taught me how to keep fit and play and act fairly. Later, I continued training with some of the greatest athletes and coaches whose success and achievements have always been a huge motivation for me to become the Olympic Champion. After taking part in international competitions for the first few times, I realized what makes a true athlete. I was impressed by a huge number of young, strong and talented athletes with whom I shared the same goals and dreams. The spirit of competition was what motivated us all. The desire to compete with them and show better results have made me the real athlete I am today. I’ve had a lot of success: I’ve won two Olympic gold medals and have become a multiple-time World and European Champion.



I’ve set numerous world records and have gained the title of the planet’s strongest weightlifter, but it’s been the result of a lot of hard work. All of that would be impossible without the help from my coaches, without love from my friends and of course, my family. Weightlifting is a huge part of my life. I’m in training every single day which practically leaves no time for me to relax - sport totally dominates my life. I’ve achieved a lot but I am looking forward to achieving even more. It seems to me I haven’t lifted my maximum weights yet. To achieve true heights in sports, it’s important to stay motivated and to concentrate on your body and the performance itself. You can do it just like any great athlete if you really want it and work hard for it!”

3. Choose and say who are the sentences about: Nona Gaprindashvili, Lasha Talakhadze or Both?

| Who... | Nona Gaprindashvili | Lasha Talakhadze | Both |
|---|---------------------|------------------|------|
| 1. was the only female chess player in her town? | ✓ | | |
| 2. was advised to start practising the sport seriously? | | | |
| 3. became a World Champion? | | | |
| 4. is a two-time Olympic Champion? | | | |
| 5. mentions the role of his/her father? | | | |
| 6. says that sport plays a big role in his/her life? | | | |
| 7. spends a lot of time training? | | | |

Vocabulary in Context

4. Match the underlined words and phrases with their Georgian equivalents. The contexts will help.

- | | |
|---|------------------------------|
| 1. European Junior <u>Championships</u> | a. მიაღწიოს მიზანს |
| 2. I beat the world <u>record</u> . | b. მონაწილეობა მივიღო |
| 3. I had a <u>strong will</u> . | c. ჩემპიონატი |
| 4. Raphael Nadal has a new <u>coach</u> . | d. მონღომეზული |
| 5. I was very <u>determined</u> . | e. ძლიერი სურვილი |
| 6. I was <u>motivated</u> to run faster. | f. მსოფლიო რეკორდი დავამყარე |
| 7. My big desire is to <u>take part</u> in the Olympic Games. | g. მიზანდასახული |
| 8. Athletes try hard to <u>reach their goals</u> . | h. მწვრთნელი |

5. Match the words under A with the words under B and write eight phrases in your notebooks. For example: beat+ the record. Note that some words under A can be paired with more than one word under B.

| | |
|--|---|
| A | B |
| 1. beat 2. bright 3. win 4. keep 5. learn 6. reach 7. unforgettable 8. female | a. silver medal b. fit c. from d. goals e. the record f. memory g. future h. athlete |

6. Read the text about the world famous footballer and Olympic medal winner from Cameroon, Samuel Eto'o. Complete the sentences in your notebooks with the words and phrases from the box. There is one extra word given.

bright future gold medal was in good shape ~~motivated~~
 remained satisfied with tournament was training



Samuel Eto'o Fils - best African footballer

Samuel Eto'o Fils was born on March 10, 1981, in Cameroon, west coast of Africa. As a child he was motivated (1) to play football and his coach always said he would have a _____ (2). He _____ (3) at the Youth Academy and first came to national attention while playing for the 1996 Cup of Cameroon. At only 16 years of age, Eto'o surprised spectators with his attacks but he was never _____ (4) his achievements. He caught the attention of Real Madrid, one of the top teams in Europe. At the 2000 Olympic Games in Sydney, Australia, Cameroon defeated Spain and won the first Olympic _____ (5) in the nation's history. He _____ (6) and trained hard to be successful with Barcelona. He _____ (7) the top scorer for Barcelona as well as in the Spanish league and he also holds the award of Best African Footballer.

➔  Listening

7. You are going to listen to the interview with the Olympic champion Marg Crowley, the Australian 400m runner. Marg gave this interview before she became an Olympic champion. Say the words you think you will hear. Then listen and check if you were right. There is only one extra word.

| | | |
|--------------|--------------|--|
| career | coached |  |
| compete | the Olympics | |
| competitions | tournament | |
| the Internet | | |

8. Listen again and say if the sentences below are true or false.

| Marg Crowley... | True | False |
|---|------|-------|
| 1. was not happy about being on the 1996 Australian team. | | ✓ |
| 2. expected to run in the Olympics when she was a kid. | | |
| 3. was 14 years old when she competed in track events. | | |
| 4. took part in kids' team sports. | | |
| 5. has been in the US for 2 months. | | |
| 6. is planning to go sightseeing after the Olympics. | | |
| 7. will try answering kids' questions on the Internet. | | |

Grammar: Future in the Past

Look at the sentences:

- Victor Saneev said that he would never stop being a sportsman.
- Marg Crowley said that she would stay in Sydney for some time.

would never stop and would stay express future action or intention seen from a particular time in the past.

This is called Future in the Past. Now look at the sentences in direct and indirect speech:

- He said: "I will participate in the Olympics." - He said that he would participate in the Olympics.
- He said: "I will make my dream come true." - He said that he would make his dream come true.

It is clear from the examples that Future in the Past is usually used in Indirect Speech when the main verb is in the past: He said that he would...

Look at the rules of direct and indirect speech in the grammar section of Unit 14. Then think of other examples of Future in the Past and share them with your friends and your teacher.

Remember: I would = I'd, he would = he'd, etc.

9. Read the first sentence. Then complete the second sentence so that it means the same as the first.

1. "I will finish it by next Tuesday." Vakho said that he would finish it by next Tuesday.
2. "I'll finish school in two years' time." Anna said that _____ in two years' time.
3. "I'll go to the football match tomorrow." Niko said that _____ the next day.
4. "I will make a phone call and be back in a few minutes." Paul said that _____ in a few minutes.
5. "I won't be in Batumi next summer." Lucy told us that _____ the following summer.
6. "It won't take me very long to do it." Irakly said that _____.
7. "I'll see you tomorrow." Maria told me that _____ the next day.

10. Put the verbs in *Future in the Past*. Choose them from the list. One verb is extra.

create design do go marry participate train

1. They said they would go to Kobuleti on holiday.
2. Simon told us he _____ a new website next month.
3. The players said they _____ their best to beat the other team.
4. Avto said he _____ harder next year.
5. Gio said he _____ a new computer game soon.
6. Dato said that his friend _____ in summer.

Action-oriented task: Interview a sportsperson

Speaking

Work with a partner.

Imagine that one of you is a world famous sports star and the other is a well-known journalist who leads a popular TV sports programme. The journalist asks the sports star questions about his/her life and career. When you finish change roles. Report the answers to the whole class.

Questions can be:

- How old were you when you started training for this sport? • Which was your most important achievement?
- How many medals have you won? Which? When? • What do you do to keep fit? How do you keep in good shape?
- What are your plans for the future?

The sportsman can use some of these words and phrases:

from my childhood / win a (Olympic) medal / beat the record / world (European) championships / competition / keep in shape / train / junior team / determined / motivated / coach / strong will

Now get ready to write

12. According to the information you got from your friend in ex.11 write a paragraph about the sportsperson you have interviewed. Write between 80-100 words.

Start with:

I interviewed a famous sportsperson I asked if.... He/She said that



1. Work in groups of three or four. Try to make the lists of:

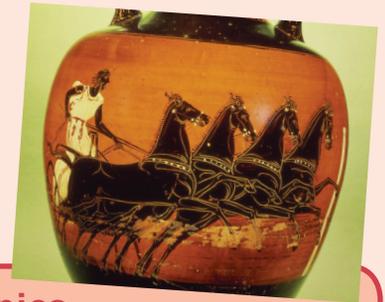
- cities or countries in which Olympic Games have been held
- kinds of sports which are included in the Olympic Games.

Compare your lists to other groups' lists. How much do you have in common?



2. Now go through the text about the history of the Olympic Games and match the titles (A-F) with the paragraphs (1-4). Two titles are extra.

- A The first well-known athlete
- B The first Olympians
- C Olympics didn't stop wars
- D Popular from the start
- E How fair was it?
- F The last Olympians



The real story of the ancient Olympics

1. B

About 3000 years before the first Olympic Games, there were stories about competitions between the gods who were thought to live on Mount Olympus in northern Greece. The word Olympic comes from the name of the mountain, and from the town of Olympia. It was here that the Greeks began to hold sporting events as a way of giving thanks to their gods. The Greeks loved sports and games and held them in many different places, but the ones held in Olympia finally became the most important. These games were for Zeus, who was their most important god.

2.

The first Olympics were held in 776 BC. The Games became so popular that, even in times of war, the armies stopped fighting while the Games were on. Twenty thousand spectators who used to fill the Olympia stadium travelled a long way to watch the games. The athletes, who were often from rich families, came from all over Greece. Foreigners could not compete in the games. Women were not even allowed to watch, and this was partly because the athletes did not wear clothes. In the modern Olympic Games the winning athletes are given medals, but in those days crowns of leaves were placed on the winners' heads. The purpose of the games was to compete because you loved sport, not because you wanted money. But in fact, the winners often became very rich and famous, and their cities became famous too.

3.

Like today, The Olympic Games were held every four years. At first there was only one event, which was a race of just under 200 meters long. In 720 BC, another race of about 4.5 kilometers was added. Later there was horse racing, chariot* racing, wrestling and other events. Perhaps the most famous Olympic athlete at that time was Leonidas of Rhodes. Between 164 and 152 BC, he won all three running competitions in four different Games: twelve wins! This makes him the most successful Olympic athlete of all time.

4.

Olympic competitions were sometimes quite unfair, and some competitors were guilty of cheating. One example of unfairness was in the 67 AD Games, when the Emperor Nero decided to enter the Olympic horse race. He was the only competitor in the race, because everyone was afraid of him. So he became an Olympic champion, even though he had drunk a lot of wine and did not finish the race! In 393 AD, the Emperor Theodosius decided that there would be no more Olympic Games. They had been held for more than a thousand years, but then stopped and forgotten. And it was only in 1896 when the first of the 'modern' Olympic Games were held again. That happened in Athens, the capital of Greece.

*chariot - ეტლი

3. Which sentences are true and which are false according to the text above? Choose and say the appropriate answer.

| | True | False |
|---|------|-------|
| 1. Ancient Greeks were very fond of sports and games. | V | |
| 2. People from other countries competed in the Games. | | |
| 3. Women did not watch the Olympic Games. | | |
| 4. The Olympic Games were initially held every year. | | |
| 5. Dishonesty was a problems in ancient Greece. | | |
| 6. The Emperor Theodosius stopped the Games for long. | | |

Vocabulary in Context

4. Match the definitions with the underlined words in the text.

1. A person who does not belong to your country foreigner
2. A game or an event which people try to win
3. Usually to be seen on the heads of kings
4. A person who takes part in a competition
5. Person who takes part in sports, particular in running and jumping
6. Dishonest

5. Match the words under A with the words under B and write six phrases in your notebooks. For example: come+from. Note that some words under A can be paired with more than one word under B.

A

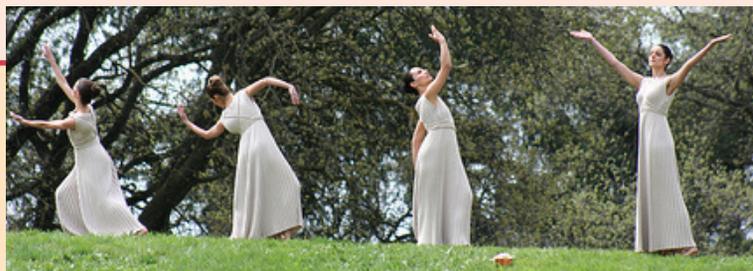
| | |
|----------|---------|
| 1. come | 4. give |
| 2. crazy | 5. win |
| 3. hold | 6. ride |

B

| | |
|-----------|--------------|
| a. about | d. games |
| b. from | e. a chariot |
| c. thanks | f. a crown |

6. Read the dialogue below and complete the sentences in your notebooks with the words and phrases from the box. One word is extra.

| | |
|----------------|-------------|
| ancient Greece | came from |
| competitions | gave thanks |
| Olympic Games | perform |
| wrestling | won crowns |



Nino: Did you watch the opening ceremony of the Olympic Games (1) yesterday?
Keti: No, I didn't.
Nino: Oh I did, and I thought it was brilliant. Especially the scenes from _____ (2). Sportsmen who _____ (3) different countries were performing. They competed in different sports and the best ones _____ (4)
Keti: What did they _____ (5)?
Nino: They performed the sports that they played in Ancient Greece: riding a chariot, _____ (6), running. And at the end of the performance, they _____ (7) to the gods.
Keti: And the woman dressed in traditional Greek clothes lit an Olympic flame as if in old Greece...



Listening

7. You will listen to four teenagers: Colleen from Ireland, Irakli from Georgia, Miriam from Israel, and Nico from Greece. They give their opinions about the Olympic Games. Before you listen, discuss the questions with your partner:

- Did you and your friends watch the last Olympic Games on TV?
- Which sports do you and friends prefer to watch?

8. Now listen to the recording and match the opinions with the speakers. Choose and say the appropriate name.

| Who... | Colleen | Irakli | Miriam | Nico |
|--|---------|--------|--------|------|
| 1. thinks that watching Olympics makes you feel positive? | | | ✓ | |
| 2. gets tired of the news about wars and politics. | | | | |
| 3. wants to take part in the Olympic Games one day? | | | | |
| 4. always watches football during Olympics? | | | | |
| 5. thinks Olympics shouldn't be held in different countries? | | | | |
| 6. is a swimmer? | | | | |

Grammar: Past Perfect

Look at the sentences:

- Nero became an Olympic champion, even though he had drunk a lot of wine.
- Leonidas of Rhodes won three races because he had trained much.

had drunk and had trained are Past Perfect of the verbs drink and train.

We use Past Perfect to talk about a past action which happened before another past action or past time. It is often used with the words *already, before, just, by, since, for*. More examples are:

- When Anna arrived at the party Sandro had already left.
- I had just woken up when the phone called.

Now look at questions and negative forms:

They hadn't watched the game by then. Had they watched the game by then?

Can you make the rule for forming the Past Perfect: Its affirmative, negative and interrogative forms? Ask your teacher or your friends for advice.

9. Open the brackets and put the verbs in Past Perfect.

1. When the police arrived, the car had gone (go).
2. Jim _____ (eat) everything by the time the guests arrived.
3. By the time I got to the shop, it _____ (already/close).
4. I heard a crash but the car _____ (go) when I looked out of my window.
5. When the police gave her back her purse, someone _____ (take) all her money.
6. When they left home, it _____ (already/start) to rain.
7. She _____ (be) a dancer for ten years before she became well-known.



10. Rewrite the underlined parts of the sentences using Past Perfect .

1. He/ study/London/before came to Georgia.
He had studied in London before he came to Georgia.
2. Irakli/read/the book/ so he knew the story of the film when he saw it.
3. His family/live there/ since 1998 when they moved last year.
4. The audience/fall /asleep long before the end of his boring speech.
5. After /I/tell/her/the truth I felt much better.
6. Niko already/take/skiing lessons/for a month before going to Bakuriani last January.
7. When she got back home at midnight, her parents/already return.



11. Read the text below and put the verbs in brackets in Past Perfect.

Yesterday's marathon

Yesterday's marathon finished at about three o'clock and an hour later the streets were completely empty. The runners (1) had begun (begin) the race around the city at midday. Most of them (2) _____ (stay) in the race to the end. By about 1 o'clock the winner (3) _____ (cross) the finishing line. The man with the stopwatch (4) _____ (keep) time of the whole race. The streets (5) _____ (be) closed for five hours. Nobody (6) _____ (walk) or (7) _____ (drive) a car in those streets for that period.

Action-oriented task: Discuss your favourite sport



Speaking



12.

Discuss these questions with your partner: a. Do you have your favourite sport? b. Which national or international sports team do you support in the Olympic Games? c. Do you think the Olympic Games will change in the future? d. Do you know the names of Georgian Olympic Games winners? e. Would you like the Olympic Games to be held in Georgia? Why? Why not?

Use the phrases below as you speak.

I am a fan of... / I love... / my favourite... / during the Olympics I always / never watch... / It's great to see ... / I am crazy about... / It's not one of my favourites...



Now get ready to write



13. Write a paragraph of not more than 100 words on your favourite sport. These questions will help you.

Is it a summer or winter sport?
Do you need special equipment for it?
Is it played by a team or an individual?

Is it an indoor or outdoor sport?
Is it popular among your friends?
Have you ever played or done this sport?

The names for different sports might be useful for you:

wrestling / ice skating / horse racing/ football / tennis / skiing / table tennis / running / judo / basketball / boxing / skating / swimming / diving / water polo / volleyball / weightlifting / discus throw ...

↓

1. **Read the first sentence. Then complete the second sentence so that it means the same as the first one. You can insert from 2 to 5 words in each gap.**

1. Liverpool played better than Real Madrid. Real Madrid didn't play as well as Liverpool.
2. John drives more carefully than his brother. His brother doesn't drive
3. The foreigner spoke English more fluently than I did. I didn't speak
4. I will never give up sports. He said that he
5. I will spend two weeks there. He said that he
6. Maria types faster than Nelly. Nelly....
7. Nini skis better than her sister. Nini's sister doesn't ski
8. We will go sightseeing this morning. They said that they
9. I will watch a new French film this weekend. He said that he
10. I will buy some sandwiches here. She said that she
11. He is a fast runner. He
12. The weather is worse than I expected. The weather is

↓

2. **George has just started work. Every working day is the same for him. Read the prompts below and write sentences about what he will be doing. Use Future Continuous.**

1. He / have / breakfast / 7. He will be having breakfast at 7.
2. He / leave / the house / 8.30.
3. He / arrive / at work / 9.
4. He / work / from 9 to 6.
5. He / have / lunch / 12.
6. He / leave / work / 6.
7. He / meet / his friends / 6.30.
8. He / drive / home / 7.30.
9. He / have / late dinner / 8.
10. He / read / newspapers / from 9 to 10.
11. He / watch TV / from 10 to 11.
12. He / sleep / 11.30.

↓

3. **Read the sentences below and put the verbs into the Past Perfect tense.**

1. When I left the house, I realized that I had forgotten (forget) my keys.
2. After I _____ (finish) my classes, I decided to go for a walk with friends.
3. Kote started studying after his friends _____ (leave).
4. He bought Mary a present yesterday because she _____ (do) so well in the concert.
5. When he saw Julie, he realized that he _____ (see) her before.
6. She _____ (wait) for an hour before the bus came.
7. They _____ (live) in Argentina for 4 years before they moved to Italy.
8. When he arrived at the cinema, the film _____ (already/start).
9. It was Ann's first flight. She _____ (never/fly) before.
10. He wasn't very good at tennis because he _____ (never/practised) it well.
11. 'Was he at home when you arrived?' 'No, he _____ (go) by then.'
12. I met Nino a few days ago. She _____ (just/take) her English exam.

↓
4. Complete the sentences with the appropriate phrase. One phrase is extra.

beat the record ~~bronze medal~~ sightseeing tours open-air museum
reach the goal recovered from stay fit satisfied with strong will
tour guide triple jump unique sights were flooded

1. She won a bronze medal in the Sydney Olympics.
2. He works as a _____ in the local tourist agency.
3. We climbed up to Narikala fortress from where we saw the _____ of old Tbilisi.
4. Many people visit the _____ which has all sorts of country houses in it.
5. After a long treatment Niko has at last _____ his bad injuries.
6. Due to his strong will and determination the sportsman managed to _____.
7. During our stay in Greece we were taken to several exciting _____.
8. Victor Saneev won the Olympic medal in _____.
9. Last year several villages of the west Georgia _____ after the heavy rain.
10. Exercise at least three times a week if you want to _____.
11. Samuel Eto'o probably has a _____ as he exercises a lot.
12. In 2004 Giorgi Asanidze _____ and became the Olympic champion.

↓
5. How many words do you know? In your notebooks write the Georgian translation next to each word. Then check the meaning in the Wordlist at the end of the book. Count the correct answers and write the number. All the words are from units 21-24.

Out of 30 words I know _____.

- | | | |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| 1. open-air <u>ღია ციხე ქვეშე</u> | 2. crash | 3. competition |
| 4. crown | 5. athlete | 6. compete |
| 7. masterpiece | 8. war | 9. will |
| 10. a mosque | 11. fascinating | 12. unfair |
| 13. fortress | 14. junior team | 15. independent |
| 16. attractive | 17. strait | 18. determined |
| 19. coach | 20. regrets | 21. indifferent |
| 22. successful | 23. fair | 24. achievement |
| 25. confident | 26. motivation | 27. foreigner |
| 28. failure | 29. flood | 30. guilty |

IRREGULAR VERBS

| Base form | Past simple | Past participle |
|-----------|----------------|-----------------|
| be | was, were | been |
| bear | bore | borne |
| beat | beat | beaten |
| become | became | become |
| begin | began | begun |
| blow | blew | blown |
| break | broke | broken |
| broadcast | broadcast | broadcast |
| bring | brought | brought |
| build | built | built |
| burst | burst | burst |
| buy | bought | bought |
| catch | caught | caught |
| choose | chose | chosen |
| come | came | come |
| cost | cost | cost |
| cut | cut | cut |
| deal | dealt | dealt |
| do | did | done |
| dig | dug | dug |
| drink | drank | drunk |
| drive | drove | driven |
| eat | ate | eaten |
| fall | fell | fallen |
| feed | fed | fed |
| feel | felt | felt |
| fight | fought | fought |
| find | found | found |
| fly | flew | flown |
| forbid | forbade | forbidden |
| forget | forgot | forgotten |
| forgive | forgave | forgiven |
| freeze | froze | frozen |
| get | got | got/gotten |
| give | gave | given |
| go | went | gone |
| grow | grew | grown |
| have | had | had |
| hear | heard | heard |
| hide | hid | hidden |
| hold | held | held |
| hurt | hurt | hurt |
| keep | kept | kept |
| know | knew | known |
| lay | laid | laid |
| lead | led | led |
| learn | learnt/learned | learnt/learned |

| Base form | Past simple | Past participle |
|------------|-------------|-----------------|
| leave | left | left |
| lend | lent | lent |
| let | let | let |
| lie | lay | lain |
| light | lit/lighted | lit/lighted |
| lose | lost | lost |
| make | made | made |
| mean | meant | meant |
| meet | met | met |
| pay | paid | paid |
| quit | quit | quit |
| read | read | read |
| ride | rode | ridden |
| ring | rang | rung |
| rise | rose | risen |
| run | ran | run |
| say | said | said |
| see | saw | seen |
| seek | sought | sought |
| sell | sold | sold |
| send | sent | sent |
| shake | shook | shaken |
| shine | shone | shone |
| show | showed | shown/showed |
| sing | sang | sung |
| shut | shut | shut |
| sit | sat | sat |
| sleep | slept | slept |
| speak | spoke | spoken |
| spend | spent | spent |
| spring | sprang | sprung |
| stand | stood | stood |
| steal | stole | stolen |
| swim | swam | swum |
| swing | swung | swung |
| take | took | taken |
| teach | taught | taught |
| tear | tore | torn |
| tell | told | told |
| think | thought | thought |
| throw | threw | thrown |
| understand | understood | understood |
| wake | woke/waked | woken/waked |
| wear | wore | worn |
| win | won | won |
| write | wrote | written |

WORDLIST

Aborigine /'æbərɪdʒəni/ – ავსტრალიის მკვიდრი, ადგილობრივი მაცხოვრებელი
access /'æksɪs/ – მისაწვდომობა, მისაღვდომობა, (ხელი მივიწვდება)
AD /,eɪ'di:/ – ჩვენი წელთაღრიცხვით
add /æd/ (v) – დამატება
addict /'ædɪkt/ – რაიმეთი ზედმეტად გატაცებული ადამიანი
adult /'ædʌlt; ə'dʌlt/ – მოზრდილი; უფროსი ადამიანი
advantage /əd'vɑ:ntɪdʒ/ – უპირატესობა
advertisement /əd'vɜ:tɪsmənt/ – რეკლამა, განცხადება
advertising /'ædvɜ:təɪzɪŋ/ – რეკლამა, რეკლამირება
afford /ə'fɔ:d/ – საშუალების ქონა, თავისთვის ნების მიცემა
affordable /ə'fɔ:dəbl/ – ხელმისაწვდომი ფასი
against /ə'geɪnst; ə'geɪnst/ – წინააღმდეგ
AIDS /eɪdz/ – შიდსი
almond /'ɑ:mənd/ – ნუში; ნუშის
ambition /æm'biʃn/ – მისწრაფება
ambitious /æm'biʃəs/ – მიზანსწრაფული
ambulance /'æmbjʌləns/ – სასწრაფო დახმარების მანქანა
ancestor /'ænsɛstə(r)/ – წინაპარი
ancient /'eɪnʃənt/ – ძველი, უძველესი
annoy /ə'noɪ/ (v) – წყენა, გაღიზიანება
antiques /æn'ti:ks/ – ანტიკვარული ნივთები
applied arts /ə'plɑɪd 'ɑ:ts/ – გამოყენებითი ხელოვნება
argue /'ɑ:gju:/ (v) – კამათი, დავა
argument /'ɑ:gjʊmənt/ – კამათი, დავა
army /'ɑ:mi/ – ჯარი
artist /'ɑ:tɪst/ – მხატვარი; ხელოვანი
artistic /ɑ:'tɪstɪk/ – არტისტული
athlete /'æθli:t/ – ძალოსანი, ათლეტი
audience /'ɔ:diəns/ – მსმენელი
average /'ævərɪdʒ/ – საშუალო
award /ə'wɔ:d/ – ჯილდო; დაჯილდოება
awful /'ɔ:fl/ – საშინელი
baby-sit /'beɪbɪsɪt/ (v) – ბავშვის მოვლა
baking tray /'beɪkɪŋ treɪ/ – მაყალი
band /bænd/ – ბენდი, პატარა ორკესტრი
battle /'bætl/ – ბრძოლა
BC /,bi:'si:/ – ჩვენს წელთაღრიცხვამდე
beat /bi:t/ (v) – ათქვევა
believe /brɪ'li:v/ (v) – რწმენა, დაჯერება
book /bʊk/ (v) – დაჯავშნა, შეკვეთა
border /'bɔ:də(r)/ – საზღვარი
bored /bɔ:d/ – მობეზრებული, მოწყენილი
box-office name /'bɒksɒfɪs neɪm/ – დიდ შემოსავლიანი ფილმის მსახიობი
branch /brɑ:ntʃ/ – ტოტი
break /breɪk/ – შესვენება; პაუზა
breeze /bri:z/ – ნიავი, ბრიზი
broadcast /'brɔ:dkɑ:st/ (v) – ტრანსლაცია, მაუწყებლობა
bushels of /'bʊʃlz əv; -ɒv/ – ბევრი, დიდი რაოდენობით
canal /kə'næl/ – არხი
cancer /'kænsə(r)/ – კიბო
candy /'kændi/ – კანფეტი, ტკბილეულობა
career /kə'riə(r)/ – კარიერა, საქმიანობა, პროფესია

cash /kæʃ/ – ნაღდი ფული
cave /keɪv/ – გამოქვაბული
ceramics /sə'ræmɪks/ – კერამიკა
chain /tʃeɪn/ – ჯაჭვი, ძეწკვი
changeable /'tʃeɪndʒəbl/ – ცვალებადი
channel /'tʃænl/ – არხი
character /'kærəktə(r)/ – გმირი
chariot /'tʃæriət/ – ეტლი
charity /'tʃærəti/ – ქველმოქმედება
chat /tʃæt/ – საუბარი, ლაყბობა, კომპიუტერით საუბარი
cheat /tʃi:t/ (v) – მოტყუება, ყალბობა
chemistry /'kemɪstri/ – ქიმია
chime /tʃaɪm/ (v) – ზარის რეკვა
chop /tʃɒp/ (v) – დაჭრა, დაჭრამაცება
cinnamon /'sɪnəməŋ/ – დარიჩინი
climate /'klaɪmət/ – კლიმატი
coach /kəʊtʃ/ – მწვრთნელი, წვრთნა
coal-mine /'kəʊlmaɪn/ – ნახშირის მადარო
comb /kəʊm/ – სავარცხელი; თმის სამაგრი
comic /'kɒmɪk/ – კომიკოსი მსახიობი
commercial /kə'mɜ:ʃl/ – სატელევიზიო რეკლამა
comparatively /kəm'pærətɪvli/ – შედარებით
compare /kəm'peə(r)/ (v) – შედარება
compete /kəm'pi:t/ (v) – შეჯიბრი, შეჯიბრება
competition /,kɒmpə'tɪʃn/ – შეჯიბრი
competitor /kəm'petɪtə(r)/ – მეტოქე, კონკურენტი
complete /kəm'pli:t/ – სრული
conditions /kən'dɪʃnz/ – პირობები
confident /'kɒnfɪdənt/ – თავდაჯერებული
confused /kən'fju:zd/ – არეული, აბნეული, თავგზაბნეული
consist /kən'sɪst/ (v) – შედგება, შეეკვა
cookie /'kʊki/ – ორცხობილა, მშრალი ნამცხვარი
cool /ku:l/ – მაგარი
copy /'kɒpi/ (v) – გადაწერა, ასლის გადაღება, მიბაძვა
court /kɔ:t/ – კორტი
cover page /'kʌvə peɪdʒ/ – ყდა
crafts /krɑ:fts/ – ხელოვნებითი საგნები
crash /kræʃ/ (v) – შეჯახება
crowd /kraʊd/ – ბრბო, გროვა
crown /kraʊn/ – გვირგვინი; მეფედ კურთხევა
crystal /'krɪstl/ – ბროლი; ბროილს
cure /kjʊə(r)/ – განკურნება
customer /'kʌstəmə(r)/ – მომხმარებელი, კლიენტი
daily /'deɪli/ – დღიური, ყოველდღიური
damage /'dæmɪdʒ/ – ზიანი, დაზიანება
danger /'deɪndʒə(r)/ – საფრთხე
decorate /'deɪkəreɪt/ (v) – მორთვა
delicious /dɪ'lɪʃəs/ – გემრიელი
delighted /dɪ'laɪtɪd/ – კმაყოფილი, აღტაცებული
deliver /dɪ'lɪvə(r)/ (v) – მიტანა (ფოსტის, საჭმლის, საქონლის)
depend /dɪ'pend/ (v) – დამოკიდებულება (დამოკიდებულია on, upon)
depressed /dɪ'prest/ – დათრგუნული
designer /dɪ'zaɪnə/ – დიზაინერი
desire /dɪ'zaɪə(r)/ – სურვილი

determined / dɪ'tɜːmɪnd / – მიზანდასახული
digest / daɪ'dʒest; dɪ- / (v) – გადამუშავება
digestive system / daɪ'dʒestɪv sɪstəm; dɪ- / – საჭმლის მომნელებელი სისტემა
director / dɪ'rektə(r); dɪ-, daɪ- / – რეჟისორი
disappear / ,dɪsə'piə(r) / – გაქრობა, გაუჩინარება
disaster / dɪ'zɑːstə(r) / – მარცხი
discover / dɪ'skʌvə(r) / (v) – აღმოჩენა
disease / dɪ'ziːz / – ავადმყოფობა
dissolve / dɪ'zɒlv / (v) – დაშლა, გახსნა
district / 'dɪstrɪkt / – უბანი, რაიონი
divide / dɪ'vaɪd / (v) – გაყოფა
donate / dəʊ'neɪt / (v) – შეწირვა, ჩუქება
double-decker bus / ,dʌbl'dekə(r) bʌs / – ორსართულიანი ავტობუსი
dough / daʊ / – ცომი
drama club / 'drɑːmə klʌb / – თეატრალური წრე
driving license / 'draɪvɪŋ laɪsns / – მართვის მოწმობა
dry / draɪ / – მშრალი
dumb blond / 'dʌm blɒnd / – სუფელი ქერა ლამაზმანი
duration / dju'reɪʃn / – ხანგრძლივობა
dynamite / 'daɪnəmaɪt / – დინამიტი
earn / ɜːn / – გამოიმუშავება, შოვნა (ფულის)
easy-going / ,iːzi'gəʊɪŋ / – უდარდელი
education / ,edʒu'keɪʃn / – განათლება
e-mail / 'iːmeɪl / – ელექტრონული ფოსტა
embarrassing / ɪm'bærəʃɪŋ / – უხერხული
enormous / ɪ'nɔːməs / – უზარმაზარი
entertainment / ,entə'teɪnmənt / – გართობა; გასართობი
environment / ɪn'vaɪrənmənt / – გარემო
equipment / ɪ'kwɪpmənt / – აღჭურვილობა
establish / ɪ'stæblɪʃ / (v) – დაარსება, დაფუძნება, დამკვიდრება
eve / ɪv / – წინაღვე
exciting / ɪk'saɪtɪŋ / – ამბავი, აღმადრებელი, ძალიან საინტერესო
exhibit / ɪg'zɪbɪt / (v) – ჩვენება, გამოფენა
experience / ɪk'spɪəriəns / – გამოცდილება
explosive / ɪk'splɒsɪv; -zɪv / – ასაფეთქებელი ნივთიერება
expression / ɪk'spreʃn / – სახის გამომეტყველება
eyesight / 'aɪsaɪt / – მხედველობა
facilities / fə'sɪlətɪz / – დამატებითი კომპლექსები; საშუალება, ხელსაყრელი პირობები
fan / fæn / – გულშემატკივარი
fascinating / 'fæsɪneɪtɪŋ / – მომხიბვლელი, მომაჯადოებელი, წარმტაცო
fashionable / 'fæʃnəbl / – მოდური
favourite / 'feɪvəɪt / – საყვარელი
festive / 'festɪv / – სადღესასწაულო
fine art / faɪn 'ɑːt / – ხელოვნება
fine arts / faɪn 'ɑːts / – ნატიფი ხელოვნება
fingernails / 'fɪŋgəneɪlz / – ხელის ფრჩხილები
first footer / ,fɜːst 'fʊtə(r) / – მკვლე
fit / fɪt / – ჯანმრთელი
fit / fɪt / (v) – მორგება
fizzy / 'fɪzi / – გაზიანი
flight / flaɪt / – თვითმფრინავის რეისი
flooded / 'flʌdɪd / – დატბორილი
footprints / 'fʊtprɪnts / – ნაფეხურები
footstep / 'fʊtstep / – ნაბიჯის ხმა
forecast / 'fɔːkɑːst / – ამინდის პროგნოზი
foreigner / 'fɔːrənə(r) / – უცხოელი
fortress / 'fɔːtrəs / – ციხე-სიმაგრე; მაღალი, დიდი კედელი
found / faʊnd / (v) – დაარსება
frank / fræŋk / – გულწრფელი
frosty / 'frɒsti / – სუსხიანი, ცივი
fume / fjuːm / – გამონაბოლქვი
fund / fʌnd / – ფონდი
gain / geɪn / (v) – შეძენა, მიღება, მოპოვება
garbage / 'gɑːbɪdʒ / – ნაგავი
generation / ,dʒenə'reɪʃn / – თაობა
generous / 'dʒenərəs / – გულუხვი
giant / 'dʒaɪənt / – გიგანტი, უზარმაზარი
giddy / 'ɡɪdi / – თავბრუსმომხვევი; აჩქარებული, დაუფიქრებელი
gift / ɡɪft / – საჩუქარი
gifted / 'ɡɪftɪd / – ნიჭიერი
gigantic / dʒaɪ'ɡæntɪk / – გიგანტური, უზარმაზარი
glide / glaɪd / (v) – სრიალი; ლივლივით დაშვება
goal / ɡəʊl / – მიზანი
government / 'gʌvənmənt / – მთავრობა
graduation / ,ɡrædʒu'eɪʃn / – უმაღლესი სასწავლებლის დამთავრება
grated / 'ɡreɪtɪd / – გახეხილი
ground / graʊnd / – დაფუძნებული
guard / ɡɑːd / – დაცვა, მცველი
guide / gaɪd / – ექსკურსიამდლო; მეგზური
gym / dʒɪm / – სპორტული დარბაზი
handsome / 'hænsəm / – სიმპათიური
hang out / 'hæŋ aʊt / (v) – თავისუფალი დროის გატარება; ხეტიალი, ყიადი
hard-working / ,hɑːd'wɜːkɪŋ / – შრომისმოყვარე
harmful / 'hɑːmfʊl / – საზიანო, მავნებელი
health / helθ / – ჯანმრთელობა
healthy / 'helθi / – ჯანმრთელი
heating / 'hiːtɪŋ / – გათბობა
hero / 'hɪərəʊ / – გმირი
highlight / 'haɪlaɪt / – ყველაზე მნიშვნელოვანი, მთავარი
holiday-maker / 'hɒlədeɪmeɪkə(r); -dɪmeɪ- / – დამსვენებელი
holly / 'hɒli / – ბაძგი
honest / 'ɒnɪst / – პატიოსანი
honour / 'ɒnə(r) / – ღირსება, პატივი
hop / hɒp / – ხტუნვა; ცეკვა
horror film / 'hɒrə(r) fɪlm / – საშინელებათა ფილმი
hug / hʌɡ / (v) – ჩახუტება
huge / hjuːdʒ / – უზარმაზარი
humour / 'hjuːmə(r) / – იუმორი
icon / 'aɪkɒn / – ხატი
illegal / ɪ'liːɡl / – არალეგალური, უკანონო
impatient / ɪm'peɪʃnt / – მოუთმენელი
impressive / ɪm'presɪv / – შთამბეჭდავი
improve / ɪm'pruːv / (v) – გაუმჯობესება, გამოსწორება
include / ɪn'kluːd / – ჩართვა, შეცვლა
including / ɪn'kluːdɪŋ / – ჩათვლით
income / ɪn'ɪnkʌm / – შემოსავალი
incurable / ɪn'kjʊərəbl / – განუკურნებელი
indifferent / ɪn'dɪfrənt / – გულგრილი
indoor / ɪn'dɔː(r) / – შიდა, ოთახის შიგნითა

injury /'ɪndʒəri/ – ტრავმა
 inspire /ɪn'spaɪə(r)/ (v) – შთაგონება
 inventor /ɪn'ventə(r)/ – გამომგონებელი
 investor /ɪn'vestə(r)/ – ინვესტორი
 irresponsible /,ɪrɪ'spɒnsəbl/ – უპასუხისმგებლო
 jealous /'dʒeləs/ – ეჭვიანი, შურიანი
 jewel /'dʒu:əl/ – ძვირფასი ქვა
 jingle /'dʒɪŋɡl/ – უღარუნი, ჩხარუნი
 junior /'dʒu:niə(r)/ – ახალგაზრდული; უმცროსი
 junk food /'dʒʌŋk fu:d/ – არაჯანსაღი საკვები
 judo /'dʒu:dəʊ/ – ძიუდო
 key holder /'ki: ,həʊldə(r)/ – ბრელოკი
 kidney /'kɪdni/ – თირკმელი
 knowledge /'nɒlɪdʒ/ – ცოდნა
 latest /'leɪtɪst/ – უახლესი
 law /lɔ:/ – კანონი
 leather /'leðə(r)/ – ტყავი; ტყავის
 leisure centre /'leɪʒə sentə(r)/ – დასასვენებელი ცენტრი
 lettuce /'letɪs/ – სალათის ფოთლები
 lie /laɪ/ (v) – მდებარეობა (მდებარეობს)
 lifeless /'laɪfləs/ – უსიცოცხლო
 light /laɪt/ – მსუბუქი
 limestone /'laɪmstəʊn/ – კირქვა
 liquid /'lɪkwɪd/ – სითხე
 locate /ləʊ'keɪt/ (v) – განლაგება
 location /ləʊ'keɪʃn/ – ადგილმდებარეობა
 log on /,lɒɡ 'ɒn/ (v) – ინტერნეტში შესვლა
 look forward to /,lʊk 'fɔ:wəd tə/ (v) – მოუთმენლად
 ლოდინი
 loose /lu:s/ – ფართო, თავისუფალი (ტანსაცმელი)
 magazine /,mæɡə'zi:n/ – ჟურნალი
 major /'meɪdʒə(r)/ – ძირითადი, უმათავრესი, ყველაზე
 უფრო მნიშვნელოვანი
 masterpiece /'mɑ:stəpi:z/ – შედევრი
 measure /'meʒə(r)/ (v) – გაზომვა
 medical care /'medɪkl keə(r)/ – სამედიცინო მომსახურება
 Mediterranean (the) /,medɪtə'reɪniən/ – ხმელთაშუა ზღვა
 melt /melt/ (v) – გაღვებობა
 merry /'meri/ – მხიარული
 mild /maɪld/ – ზომიერი
 mingle /'mɪŋɡl/ (v) – შერევა, გარევა
 mint /mɪnt/ – პიტნა
 miss /mɪs/ (v) – გაცდენა
 modern technologies /,mɒdn tek'nɒlədʒɪz/ – თანამედროვე
 ტექნოლოგიები
 modest /'mɒdɪst/ – თავმდაბალი
 moist /mɔɪst/ – სველი, ნოტიო
 monk /mɒŋk/ – ბერი
 moody /'mu:di/ – მერყევი ხასიათის, უხასიათო
 mosque /mɒsk/ – მეჩეთი
 motivated /'mɔ:tveteɪtɪd/ – მონდომებული
 movie /'mu:vi/ – ფილმი
 muscles /'mʌslz/ – კუნთები
 mysterious /mɪ'stɪəriəs/ – საიდუმლოებით მოცული
 narrow /'nærəʊ/ – ვიწრო
 novel /'nɒvl/ – რომანი
 nutritionist /nju'trɪʃənɪst/ – დიეტოლოგი
 occasional /ə'keɪʒənəl/ – იშვიათი, დროდადრო
 omelette /'ɒmlət/ – ერბოკვერცხი

on-line /'ɒn,lɪn/ – ინტერნეტი
 open-air /,əʊpən'eə(r)/ – ღია ცის ქვეშ
 origin /'ɒrɪdʒɪn/ – წარმოშობა, წარმომავლობა
 Orthodox church /,ɔ:θədɒks 'tʃ:ʃ:ɪ/ – მართლმადიდებლური
 ეკლესია
 outdoor /'aʊtdɔ:(r)/ – ღია ცის ქვეშ
 out-going /'aʊtɡəʊɪŋ/ – კონტაქტური
 outstanding /'aʊt'stændɪŋ/ – გამოჩენილი, ცნობილი
 own /əʊn/ (v) – ფლობა, ქონა
 pale /peɪl/ – ფერმკრთალი; მკრთალი
 paper-round /'peɪpərəʊnd/ – გაზეთების დამტარებელი
 parsley /'pɑ:slɪ/ – ოხრახუში
 part-time job /,pɑ:t'taɪm dʒɒb/ – არასრული სამუშაო
 დატვითვის მქონე სამსახური
 pass /pɑ:s/ (v) – ნაბარება (გამოცდის)
 peace /pi:s/ – მშვიდობა
 peel /pi:l/ (v) – გათლა
 performance /pə'fɔ:məns/ – წარმოდგენა
 pheasant /'feznt/ – ხოხობი
 physics /'fɪzɪks/ – ფიზიკა
 plain water /,pleɪn 'wɑ:tə(r)/ – სასმელი წყალი
 plant /plɑ:nt/ – მცენარე
 poison /'pɔɪzn/ – საწამლავი, მოწამლვა
 poisoned /'pɔɪznd/ – მოწამლული
 polluted /pə'lju:tɪd/ – დაბინძურებული
 pollution /pə'lju:ʃn/ – გარემოს, ჰაერის დაბინძურება
 pop in /,pɒp 'ɪn/ – ცოტა ხნით შერბენა
 population /,pɒpjʊ'leɪʃn/ – მოსახლეობა
 pour /pɔ:(r)/ (v) – დასხმა
 prance /pra:ns/ (v) – ნავარდი, ცხენის ყალყზე დოგმა
 preheat /,pri:'hi:t/ (v) – შეცხელება, წინასწარ გაცხელება
 preserve /prɪ'zɜ:v/ – ნაკრძალი
 primitive /'prɪmətɪv/ – პირველყოფილი; პრიმიტიული
 private /'praɪvət/ – კერძო
 probably /'prɒbəbəlɪ/ – ალბათ, სავარაუდოდ
 prohibit /prə'hɪbɪt/ (v) – აკრძალვა
 proof /pru:f/ – დამამტკიცებელი საბუთი, მტკიცება
 prove oneself /,pru:v wʌn'self/ (v) – საკუთარი თავის
 გამოცდა
 pumpkin /'pʌmpkɪn/ – გოგრა, კვახი
 quality /'kwɒləti/ – ხარისხი
 race /reɪs/ – შეჯიბრი სიბილში
 reasonable /'ri:znəbl/ – ხელმისაწვდომი
 recipe /'resəpi/ – რეცეპტი
 record /'rekɔ:d/ – რეკორდი
 recover (from) /rɪ'kʌvə(r) (frəm)/ (v) – გამოჯანმრთელება
 regret /rɪ'ɡret/ – სინანული
 relative /'relatɪv/ – ნათესავი
 relax /rɪ'læks/ (v) – დასვენება, მოშვება, მოღუნება
 rely on /rɪ'laɪ ɒn/ – ნდობა, დაყრდნობა
 remain /rɪ'meɪn/ (v) – დარჩენა
 remedy /'remədi/ (v) – განკურნება, მოგვარება
 reporter /rɪ'pɔ:tə(r)/ – რეპორტიორი
 resort /rɪ'zɔ:t/ – კურორტი
 respect /rɪ'spekt/ (v) – პატივისცემა
 respected /rɪ'spektɪd/ – პატივისცემა, აღიარებული
 responsibility /rɪ'spɒnsə'bɪləti/ – პასუხისმგებლობა
 return /rɪ'tɜ:n/ – ორი მიმართულებით (ბილეთი)

review / rɪ'vjuː / – რეცენზია, კრიტიკული სტატია
 rings / rɪŋz / – რგოლები
 roast / rəʊst / (v) – შეწვა
 rock / rɒk / (v) – რხევა, რწვევა, ქანობა
 rotate / rəʊ'teɪt / (v) – ბრუნვა, ტრიალი
 rude / ruːd / – უხეში; უზრდელი
 ruins / 'ruːnz / – ნანგრევები
 salty / 'sɔːlti; 'sɒlti / – მარილიანი
 satisfied / 'sætɪsfɑɪd / – კმაყოფილი
 sauce / sɔːs / – სოუსი
 schedule / 'ʃedjuːl / – ცხრილი, განრიგი
 school head / 'skuːl hed / – სკოლის დირექტორი
 science / 'saɪəns / – მეცნიერება
 science fiction / ,saɪəns 'fɪkʃn / – მეცნიერული ფანტასტიკა
 screen / skriːn / – ეკრანი
 search / sɜːtʃ / (v) – გულმოდგინედ ძებნა
 season / 'siːzn / (v) – შეკმაზვა
 seat / siːt / – სკამი; ადგილი (თეატრში, ავტობუსში)
 seek / siːk / (v) – ძებნა, ძიება
 self-confident / ,self'kɒnfɪdənt / – თავდაჯერებული
 series / 'sɪəriːz / – სერიალი, სერიאלები
 serve / sɜːv / (v) – სუფრაზე მიტანა
 service / 'sɜːvɪs / – დეტისმსახურება, წირვა
 settlement / 'setlmənt / – დასახლება
 shape / ʃeɪp / – ფორმა
 share / ʃeə(r) / (v) – გაყოფა, განაწილება, გაზიარება
 showers / 'ʃaʊəz / – შხაპუნა წვიმა
 shy / ʃaɪ / – მორცხე
 sight / saɪt / – ღირშესანიშნავი ადგილი
 sightseeing / 'saɪtsiːɪŋ / – ღირშესანიშნავი ადგილების
 დათვალიერება
 sign / ʒaɪn / – აბრა; ნიშანი
 silent / 'saɪlənt / – ჩუმი, მდუმარე
 silk / sɪlk / – აბრეშუმის; აბრეშუმის
 single / 'sɪŋɡl / – ერთი მიმართულებით (ბილეთი)
 skating rink / 'skeɪtɪŋ rɪŋk / – საციგურაო მოედანი
 sleigh / ʒleɪ / – ციგა
 snack / ʒnæk / – წახემსება; მსუბუქი საუზმე
 sociable / 'səʊsɪəbl / – კონტაქტური
 sour cream / ,saʊə 'kriːm / – არაუანი
 space / ʒpeɪs / – სივრცე, ფართობი
 space-ship / 'speɪsʃɪp / – კოსმოსური ხომალდი
 spare / speə(r) / – სათადარიგო; თავისუფალი (დრო)
 species / 'spiːʃiːz / – სახეობა, ჯიშის, ჯიშები
 spectator / 'spek'teɪtə(r) / – მაყურებელი
 speed / ʒspiːd / – სიჩქარე
 spinach / 'spɪnɪʃ / – ისპანახი
 sprinkle / 'sprɪŋkl / (v) – დაშხეფება, დაყრა
 stir / stɜː(r) / (v) – მორევა
 stomach / 'stʌmək / – კუჭი
 strait / streɪt / – სრუტე
 strict / ʒstrikt / – მკაცრი
 successful / sək'sesfl / – წარმატებული
 suffer / 'sʌfə(r) / (v) – ტანჯვა
 suit / suːt; sjuːt / (v) – მოხდენა
 sunflower / 'sʌnflaʊə(r) / – მზესუმზირა
 survey / 'sɜːveɪ / – გამოკითხვა, გამოკვლევა
 swell / ʒwel / – საუცხოო, ჩინებული, შესანიშნავი

swing / swɪŋ / (v) – რწვევა, რხევა
 talent / 'tælənt / – ნიჭი
 talkative / 'tɔːkətɪv / – ლაპარაკის მოყვარული, ყბელი
 team / tiːm / – გუნდი, ნაკრები
 tight / taɪt / – ვიწრო, მოჭერილი
 timetable / 'taɪmteɪbl / – ცხრილი; განრიგი
 toffee / 'tɒfi / – ირისის მსგავსი კანფეტი
 tongue / tʌŋ / – ენა
 tour / tʊə(r) / – ტური, ექსკურსია, ტურნე
 tournament / 'tʊənmənt; 'tɔːn-; 'tɜːn- / – ტურნირი,
 ასპარეზობა
 tramp / 'træmp / – მაწანწალა
 translate / 'træns'leɪt / (v) – თარგმნა
 treasury / 'treʒəri / – საგანძური
 trendy / 'trendi / – მოდური
 trip / trɪp / – მოგზაურობა
 triple jump / 'trɪpl dʒʌmp / – სამხტომი
 unemployed / ,ʌnɪm'plɔɪd / – უმუშევარი
 unfair / ,ʌn'feə(r) / – უსამართლო
 unforgettable / ,ʌnfə'getəbl / – დაუვიწყარი
 unique / juː'nɪk / – უნიკალური; შეუდარებელი
 user / 'juːzə(r) / – მომხმარებელი
 valuable / 'væljuəbl / – ძვირფასი
 viewer / 'vjuːə(r) / – მაყურებელი
 violence / 'vaɪələns / – ძალადობა
 volunteer / ,vɒlənt'ɪə(r) / – მოხალისე
 walnut / 'wɔːlnʌt / – ნივთი
 war / wɔː(r) / – ომი
 waterfall / 'wɔːtəfɔːl / – ჩანჩქერი
 weight-lifting / 'weɪtlɪftɪŋ / – ძალოსნობა
 wet / wet / – სველი
 will / wɪl / – სურვილი
 winner / 'wɪnə(r) / – გამარჯვებული
 wise / waɪz / – ბრძენი
 wonder / 'wʌndə(r) / – სასწაული
 worry / 'wʌri / (v) – დეღვა, წუხილი
 worth / wɜːθ / – ღირებული, ღირსი
 wreath / riːθ / – გვირგვინი
 wrestling / 'reslɪŋ / – ჭიდაობა

ANSWER KEY TO THE STUDENT'S BOOK AND THE TAPESCRIPTS

UNIT 1 WELCOME TO MY WEBSITE

- Ex. 3** 2.Aka's father/dad (has) 3. Aka's mother/mum (is) 4.Aka's friends / Lado and Dato (are)
5.Ana / Aka's sister (does) 6.Aka's mother/mum (is) 7.Dato (is)
- Ex. 4** 1, 3, 4, 6 are true.
- Ex. 5** 2.in (my/his) spare time 3.has a good sense of humour 4.a cover page 5.frankly speaking
6.I don't mind 7.is mad about 8.has an exceptionally good memory 9.is easy-going 10.is modest
11.is sociable/out-going
- Ex. 6** 2.g 3.a 4.f 5.d 6.b 7.e
- Ex. 7** 2.ancestors 3.origin 4.strict 5.company 6.drive 7.different 8.mad 9.sense
10.exceptionally (extra: side)
- Ex. 9** school timetable dance music have a lunch break by myself proud of
- Ex. 10** 2.Giorgi 3.Giorgi 4.Julie 5.Giorgi 6.Julie 7.Giorgi

Tapescript (Key to ex. 10 are underlined)

Reporter: *What's it really like to be 15? In this issue we meet Giorgi from Tbilisi, Georgia and Julie from St Louis, USA. How different are their lives? Hello, Giorgi. Hello Julie. My first question is about music and movies. Tell me please what kind of music and movies do you like?*

Giorgi: *I listen to pop music. Lemon Juice is my favourite. As for films, I hate horror films, but love science fiction. I think my favourite film is 'the 5th element'.*

Julie: *I'm more into dance music. My favourite movie is Shreck 2.*

Reporter: *OK. Now.. what's your school timetable?*

Giorgi: *Well, we start at 9 and finish at 2. And we don't go to school on Saturdays and Sundays.*

Julie: *School is from 8:30 to 3. And we have a lunch break between 12 and 12:30.*

Reporter: *Thanks. Now the next question: What do you think what's the best thing about being 15?*

Giorgi: *Well... I think the best thing is having lots of friends and going out together.*

Julie: *For me the best thing is going to discos, which I can do now that I'm fifteen. And of course I love pop music.*

Reporter: *And what's the worst thing about being 15?*

Giorgi: *The worst thing? Not being able to stay out late at night. I want to but I can't. My friends can stay out later, so I'm often the first to leave. It's..... well it's embarrassing.*

Julie: *My problem is that I have to help at home a lot and look after my little sister, Rosy.*

Reporter: *What do you argue about with your parents?*

Giorgi: *I would like to be more independent and we have arguments about that. I want to stay out later and do things by myself. You know, without my parents.*

Julie: *We sometimes argue about my sister. She's always there when I have my friends in the house and she wants to talk to us and play with us. I love her.*

Giorgi: *I'm very proud of my country: its history and culture, but I don't like garbage in the streets.*

Julie: *Yes, I am too. I'm lucky to be living in one of the oldest cities in America.*

Ex. 11 1, 2, 5, 7, 8, 9, 10 are in the Present Simple

Ex. 12 2.Do you like your job? 3.How many days a week do you work? 4.How many hours a day do you work?
5.Do you usually go there by bus? 6.How much do you earn? 7.Do you sometimes work on weekends?
8.Does your boss like you?

Ex. 13 **Jennie** 2.start 3.finish 4.don't sleep 5.talk 6.sleep 7.arrives 8.gives 9.a.m. (extra: try)
Paula 2.goes 3.lives 4.costs 5.eats 6.costs 7.love 8.watch 9.are (extra: answer)

UNIT 2 I CHEATED ONCE

Ex. 3 2.Nino 3.Eliza 4.Nino 5.Eliza 6.Nino 7.Eliza

Ex. 4 2.Science and French 3.General Certificate of Secondary Education 4.At the age of seventeen
5.She walks 6.Georgian literature, English and History 7.Table tennis 8.With her friend/With Ketii

Ex. 5 2.cheat 3.gym 4.keen on 5.driving license 6.Head 7.cut 8.famous

Ex. 6 2. c 3. i 4. f 5. a 6. h 7. e 8. d 9. g

Ex. 7 2. well-equipped 3. went 4. rock 5. make (extras: famous, cheat) 6. famous 7. keen on 8. caught
9. cheat 10. over (extras: the Internet, went)

- Ex. 8** the same age as wear uniforms didn't care much
keep in touch almost no exception (extras: at once, in those years)
- Ex. 9** 2.Yes, they were. 3.Yes, he did. 4.When he was 17/ At the age of 17. 5.No, he didn't.

Tapescript (Key to ex. 8 are underlined)

Alex: *When did you go to school? In the sixties or in the seventies?*

Alex's Dad: *In the seventies in fact.*

Alex: *OK. So, in those days, when you were the same age as I am now, were teachers very strict?*

Alex's Dad: *Well, we did have to wear uniforms to school. So everyone knew what school we went to. This was a requirement. I mean we didn't have any choice. The school director was very strict about wearing uniforms. And the teachers were too.*

Alex: *Did you like going to school? Did you enjoy it?*

Alex's Dad: *Well, I can't say I enjoyed everything about school. I didn't care much about the subjects we were learning, except for literature and German. I quite liked German. But what I most liked about school was the companionship. You know, having lots of good friends. That was the best part. I still keep in touch with several of my school friends. So yes, on the whole, I suppose I did enjoy school.*

Alex: *How old were you when you left school?*

Alex's Dad: *Like most people of my generation, I left school when I was 17. We went to school when we were 7 and we had to stay there for 10 years. There was almost no exception. It was the same for everyone.*

Alex: *Did you decide what job you would do before you left school?*

Alex's Dad: *Some people do, but actually I made this decision at the university.*

Ex. 10

| <i>Present simple</i> | <i>Past simple</i> |
|---|---------------------------------------|
| <i>I don't have a driving license yet</i> | <i>All finished well</i> |
| <i>She rarely cheats</i> | <i>We decided to miss a class</i> |
| <i>It's hard to say</i> | <i>The gym wasn't equipped well</i> |
| <i>We are all music lovers</i> | <i>Did your parents enjoy school?</i> |
| | <i>Were they very strict?</i> |

- Ex. 11** 2. How long did you stay? 3. Where did you stay? 4. What did you do in the evenings?
5. Was the food good? 6. Did you go to a rock music concert? 7. Did you work?
8. Did you have a part-time job?

- Ex. 12** 2.worked 3.are 4.do 5.had 6.climbed 7.want 8.believes 9.earn 10.helps

UNIT 3 CHANGES IN THE 21ST CENTURY

Ex. 3

| <i>Who speaks about</i> | <i>Jane</i> | <i>Salome</i> | <i>Dato</i> |
|-------------------------------|-------------|---------------|-------------|
| <i>healthier food</i> | | | <i>✓</i> |
| <i>Changes in the economy</i> | | | <i>✓</i> |
| <i>Better medical care</i> | <i>✓</i> | | |
| <i>Information age</i> | | <i>✓</i> | |

- Ex. 4** 2, 3, 4, 7 are true

- Ex. 5** **Jane:** a.cure diseases b.medical care c.incurable disease d.is going to disappear

Salome: a.receive information b.get/receive education c.do business d.information age

Dato: a.economic conditions b.healthier food c.more goods d.I believe

- Ex. 6** 2.longer 3.receive 4.help 5.economic 6.live 7.healthier (extra: changes)

- Ex. 7** 2.changes 3.healthy 4.believe 5.information 6.educated 7.technologies
8.civilized (extra: incurable)

- Ex. 8** a.**Changes in Georgia:** live better; receive medical care; be earning more money

b.**Changes in Anna's personal life:** be married; have a dog

- Ex. 9** Any four of these: people will live better / receive better medical care / live longer / we will know how to run businesses better / will be earning more money / have better schools / have well-equipped gyms/will be better informed

Tapescript: (Key to ex. 8 are underlined)

What's going to happen in ten years' time? In Georgia? In the world? Or to me personally? Well, let me think... I don't think many changes will happen in the world, but I believe that things will change in Georgia. I am an optimistic person, so I think that people will live better. They will receive better medical care and live longer. The Georgian economy will grow, we will know how to run businesses better, and people will probably be earning more money than they are today.

In the next 10 years or so, I think we'll have better schools too. And some schools - those in the big towns at least - will have well-equipped gyms and Internet rooms. I do believe that the average student will be..... better informed.

As for me, I think I'll probably be married in ten years' time. And I hope I'll be living in another neighbourhood, you know, away from my parents. I'll probably be working as a TV journalist. That's if I pass my university entrance exams of course. And one more thing: I'll definitely have a dog.

Ex. 10 2.will 3.will 4.won't 5.will 6.will 7.won't

Ex. 12 2.will have 3.will ask 4.will help 5.will help 6.will spend 7.will use 8.will keep 9.will ask
10.will not/won't be (extra: show)

UNIT 4 DO YOU WORRY ABOUT THE ENVIRONMENT?

Ex. 1 Switch off your mobile phones! is different because all the others are about the environmental problems.

Ex. 2 b. Planet Earth in danger

Ex. 3 2.Car and factory fumes 3.When they smoke, use aerosol sprays or throw empty coca-cola bottles or chocolate wrappers away 4.Rivers flow into the sea carrying their pollution with them 5.Loud noise (from factories, road traffic and sound system) 6.more than 40% 7.a.to heat their houses; b.(to make space) to build their houses

Ex. 4 2.g 3.b 4.f 5.d 6.c 7.a

Ex. 5 2.h 3.f 4.a/f/g 5.a/c 6.c 7.d 8.b/c/f/g

Ex. 6 2.plants 3.made 4.enviroment 5.Earth 6.damage 7.thoughtlessly 8.pollution
9.protect (extra: traffic)

Ex. 7 problem traffic cafés lifeless polluted improve business jobs a park attract
(not heard: a bus, restaurants, work, cinema)

Ex. 8 2.Peter 3. Peter 4. Mary 5. Peter 6. Mary

Tapescript: (Key to ex. 7 are underlined)

Peter: Yes, it's really worrying – I mean a real problem - to have so much traffic in the town. But, on the other hand, if we stop traffic coming through the center, the town could become a dead place.

Mary: What do you mean "a dead place"?

Peter: I mean there are a lot of people - lots of visitors- who stop in the center and use the shops, cafés and other facilities there. If we build a by-pass round the town, we won't need so many shops and cafés in town, and most of them will lose their customers and they'll have to close. If this happens, the town center will be really quiet. It'll be lifeless.

Mary: Yes, but look at the other side of the problem. More than 300 types of transport - big trucks as well as cars - go through the center every day. So what happens? The town is noisy. And very polluted. By building a by-pass road we'll be able to make the air in our town less polluted and this will improve the quality of people's lives.

Peter: Well I suppose it depends what you mean by "the quality of life"? If traffic isn't allowed to go through the town center, there'll be no people there either. So lots of small shops and cafés will go out of business and close down. And that means that lots of people will lose their jobs. So you can't say that a by-pass would make their lives any better.

Mary: Yes, I do see what you mean, Peter. But there are other things we could do to make the town center attractive. We could build a park and a movie theatre there. And why not a discothèque too? This kind of thing would attract a lot of young people. And with plenty of people around, the shops and cafés will be able to stay open. What do you think?

Peter: Right. Now that's a better idea!

- Ex. 9** Adjectives: big, industrial, polluted, well-known, worrying, empty, fast, loud, hard
Adverbs: really, unfortunately, extremely, recently
- Ex.10** 2.fast 3.hard 4.well 5.beautifully 6.perfect 7.recent
- Ex.11** 2.fast 3.polluted 4.good 5.far 6.different 7.friendly 8.well 9.favourite
10.quiet (extra: nicely)

REVISION ONE UNITS 1-

- Ex. 1** 1.doesn't watch/ likes 2.finish/do classes finish? 3.don't understand/does it mean?
4.remember/ passed 5.am/ are you keen on? 6.was /was not (wasn't) good at/cheated
7. will be/will you be? 8.do you go/did not (didn't) like/enjoyed 9.was/ will be/do you think?
10.will become/will face. 11.did you start/wrote/were/Is 12.won't (will not) be/will not (won't) arrive
- Ex. 2** 3.Right 4....it will be... 5....event was... 6....don't own (or:... always travelled...) 7.rang 8....left...
9.Right 10...will feel... 11.Right 12.... arrived
- Ex. 3** 2.Loud 3.thoughtlessly 4.safe 5.angrily 6.strict 7.environmentally 8. exceptional 9.well
10.quickly 11.nervous 12.possible
- Ex. 4** 2.Russian origin 3.driving license 4.caused a problem 5.do business 6.economic conditions
7.medical care 8.is poisoned 9.earn money 10.in danger 11.town authorities
12.worry about (extra: popular activities)
- Ex. 5** 1.ჟურნალი 2.წინაპარი 3.კონტაქტური 4.უდარდელი 5.გარეკანი 6.სპორტული დარბაზი 7.ცხრილი
/განრიგი 8.ინვენტარი 9.განათლება 10.პირობები 11.სამუშალო 12.ალბათ/სავარაუდოდ
13.ჯანმრთელობა 14.გაქრობა 15.თანამედროვე ტექნოლოგიები 16.მჯერა 17.ენუხვარ
18.დაბინძურება 19.მონამლული 20.ჯიშები/სახეობები 21.გარემო 22.გამონაბოლქვი 23.რომანი
24.ბრწყინვალე 25.საყვარელი 26.გაუმჯობესება 27.ახსნა-განმარტება 28.განუკურნებელი
29.სამიშროება 30.მცენარე/დარგვა

UNIT 5 THE WORLD OF TEENAGERS

- Ex. 3** 2.British 3.Both 4.British 5.Both 6.Georgian 7.British 8.British 9.Georgian
- Ex. 4** 2.(At the age of) 16 3.57% 4.(a job of) a waitress 5.No, they don't 6.Yes, they do
7.web designing and baby-sitting.
- Ex. 5** a.irresponsible b.respect c.improve d.adult e.rude f.waitress
- Ex. 6** 2.ear for music. 3.baby-sitting 4.future career 5.a recent survey 6.works part-time (extra: foreign
languages)
- Ex. 7** 2.rude 3. respects 4. improving 5. career 6.job

Ex. 8

| | <i>listens to music</i> | <i>watches movies</i> | <i>studies</i> | <i>is at a friend's house</i> | <i>does sport</i> |
|---------------|-----------------------------|---------------------------|----------------|-----------------------------------|-------------------|
| <i>Robert</i> | V | V | | V | V |
| <i>Giorgi</i> | V | | | V | |
| <i>Katie</i> | V | | V | V | |

- Ex. 9** 2.smokes 3.swimming pool 4.pop 5.the same 6.entrance 7.movies

Tapescript (Key to ex. 8 are underlined)

Robert

I spend most of my free time at my friends' house or going out to the cinema. My favourite movies are comedies and science fiction. I like music too. The kind of music I like most is slow music – you know, rhythm and blues. That sort of thing. But I don't go to clubs and cafés. Well I don't drink and I don't smoke, so what's the point? I like sport, though. All kinds of sport. It's what I like doing most in fact. I do a lot of basketball, some football. Tennis too sometimes. And I go to the swimming- pool twice a week. I like computers but I never play computer games. It's a waste of time I think.

Giorgi

I'm a music lover. I spend hours just listening to music in my room. My favourite music is pop. Although my Mum and Dad are not too fond of loud music, I still keep it pretty loud sometimes. My parents get annoyed, and they say I'm lazy and rude. On Saturday evenings you can usually find me at my friend's house. I stay at his place till very late. Past midnight sometimes. We like listening to the same kind of music and we never get tired of it. Though sometimes we do play computer games, or just sit and chat.

Katie

I'm trying not to go out too much at the moment. I am getting ready for the University entrance exams so I have to study

a lot. I know if I don't improve my knowledge now - you know, learn more - I won't pass the entrance exams and then my parents will really get annoyed. They worry about my future career – about what I'm going to do with my life - and I suppose I have to respect them. But when I get tired of studying I go to my friend's. She lives next door. We listen to music or watch The Saturday Show..... I never go to the movies. I'd like to, but there's no cinema in the town I live in. Though, hopefully there soon will be, because they're building one right now.

- Ex. 10** Group 1 (-er, -est): short, cheap, quiet, heavy, happy
 Group 2 (more,most): perfect, expensive, serious, careful, exciting (heavy and happy may go into this group too)
 Group 3 (irregular): much, little, bad, good
- Ex. 11** 2.older 3.better 4.more serious 5. the happiest 6.the tallest 7.the worst 8.less
- Ex. 12** 2.the best 3.most 4.bigger 5.more well-equipped 6.more delicious 7.less 8. better

UNIT 6 COMPUTERS AT HOME

Ex. 2

| | | | | | | |
|-------------------|------|------|-----|------|------|--------|
| | Alex | Maya | Ani | Kote | Nata | Irakli |
| for computers | ✓ | ✓ | | ✓ | ✓ | |
| against computers | | | ✓ | | | ✓ |

- Ex. 3** 2.Alex 3.Irakli 4.Ani 5.Nata 6.Maya 7.Ani
- Ex. 4** 2.search for 3.violence 4.computer user 5.email (electronic mail) 6.exciting 7.computer addict
- Ex. 5** 2.d 3.g 4.f/g 5.b/g 6.a 7.h 8.c
- Ex. 6** 2.games 3.exciting 4. using 5.more 6.users 7. chat 8.ways 9. information (extra: computer, play)
- Ex. 7** extras: before school; every week (extra)
- Ex. 8** 2. Yes 3. No 4.No 5. Yes 6.Yes 7.No

Tapescript (Key to ex. 7 are underlined)

Interviewer: Do you have a computer of your own Gigi? I mean at home?
Gigi: No, I don't. Actually, I can use my cousin's computer but I usually go to an internet café. There's one not far from where I live.
Interviewer: And is it open all day and all night? Can you go there at any time of the day?
Gigi: No, I can't. I only go there at certain hours, when it's open of course. Usually I go there after school from 2 to 4 in the afternoon.
Interviewer: How much do you have to pay at the Internet café?
Gigi: It's not too bad. It's only one lari an hour.
Interviewer: You like chatting a lot. Is that right? So who do you chat with?
Gigi: Oh, different people. It can be one of my friends. Or it might be somebody from any country in the world. Last Sunday I was chatting with somebody from Brazil. We chatted for one hour.
Interviewer: Do you go there every day?
Gigi: No, not every day. Most of the time I go about three times a week.
Interviewer: And how about games? What computer game do you play most?
Gigi: I love 'Counter Strike'. All my friends play it too.
Interviewer: What do your parents think about you using computers?
Gigi: My mother says it's not good for my eyes. My dad doesn't mind though. He even promised to buy me one soon.

Ex. 9

| | |
|------------------------------|---------------------|
| Present perfect | Past simple |
| Has he ever met you? | I was 13 then. |
| She's always been nice. | We didn't enjoy it. |
| We've lived here since 2001. | Were you there? |
| I've never played rugby. | We grew up with it. |
| Have you ever tasted this? | |

- Ex. 10** 2.for 3.never 4.yet 5.just/already 6.yet 7. since
- Ex. 11** 2.has already taken 3.was/used to be 4.saw 5.didn't like 6.had 7.drove 8.has just arrived
 9.has decided 10.lost 11.has just woken up

UNIT 7 MERRY CHRISTMAS!

- Ex. 3** 2.England 3.Spain 4.Germany, Britain 5.Japan 6.Germany
Ex. 4 2. wreath of holly 3.Christmas treat 4.almond candy 5.collect money 6. Christmas Eve 7. walnut sauce
Ex. 5 1.e 2.c 3.a 4.d 5.b
Ex. 6 2.place 3.spectators 4.moved 5.donation 6.wearing 7.lamps (extra: dance)
Ex. 7 2.e 3.a 4.c 5.f 6.d

Tapescript (Key to ex. 7 are underlined)

Jingle Bell Rock

Jingle bell, jingle bell, jingle bell rock
Jingle bells swing and jingle bells ring
Snowing and blowing up bushels of fun
Now the jingle hop has begun.
Jingle bell, jingle bell, jingle bell rock
Jingle bells chime in jingle bell time
Dancing and prancing in Jingle Bell Square
In the frosty air.
What a bright time, it's the right time
To rock the night away
Jingle bell time is a swell time
To go gliding on a one-horse sleigh
Giddy-up jingle horse, pick up your feet
Jingle around the clock
Mix and a-mingle in the jingling feet
That's the jingle bell,
That's the jingle bell,
That's the jingle bell rock.

- Ex. 8** 1.Jane is listening to jazz; Is Jane listening to jazz? 3.You are sending an email; You aren't sending an email.
4.Are they dancing? They aren't dancing. 5.They are acting in the show; They aren't acting in the show.
6.Mari is sleeping; Is Mari sleeping?
Ex.9 2.are putting 3.are sending 4.are decorating 5.are getting 6.are singing

UNIT 8 CHRISTMAS GIFTS

- Ex. 3** 2.\$20 3.A gold watch chain 4.\$21 5. Three beautiful combs 6.In a shop window
7.To buy a Christmas gift for each other
Ex. 4 2.c 3.b 4.a 5.f 6.i 7.h 8.e 9.d
Ex. 5 2.gift 3.valuable 4.expression 5.comb 6.jewel 7. the Magi 8.wise
Ex. 6 2.combs 3.jewels 4.gift 5.wise 6.valuable 7.expression (extra: the Magi)
Ex. 7 2.fly 3.jewels 4.valuable 5.combs 6.expression 7.Christmas (extra: owned, wise)
Ex. 8 1.listen 2.snow 3.Christmas 4.card 5.white 6.white 7.write 8.bright 9.white

Tapescript (Key to ex. 8 are underlined)

White Christmas

I'm dreaming of a white Christmas
Just like the ones I used to know
Where the treetops glisten
and children listen
To hear sleigh bells in the snow.

I'm dreaming of a white Christmas
With every Christmas card I write
May your days be merry and bright
And may all your Christmases be white.

I'm dreaming of a white Christmas
 With every Christmas card I write
 May your days be merry and bright
 And may all your Christmases be white.

- Ex. 9** Past Continuous is used in sentences: 1, 3, 5, 6, 8
Ex. 10 b.was singing c. was cooking d.was reading e.was dancing f.were watching g.was opening
Ex. 11 1.was sitting 2.was watching 3.was cooking 4.was preparing 5.was putting 6.was standing
 7.was enjoying 8.was wearing

REVISION TWO UNITS 5-8

- Ex. 1** 2.worse 3.the shortest 4.more modern 5.less 6.easier 7.the most popular 8.more difficult
 9.the happiest 10.the worst 11.better 12.smarter
Ex. 2 2.has already written 3.have planted 4.are you waiting 5.have grown 6.is staying 7.is boiling
 8.has he been? 9.am thinking 10.am feeling 11. has never read 12. has just arrived
Ex. 3 2.was not (wasn't) listening 3.is happening 4.is snowing 5.were dancing 6.are not (aren't) listening
 7.are you wearing 8.was reading 9.is Ann crying 10.was watching 11.am looking for 12.were you doing
Ex. 4 2.computer addict 3.quality of life 4.search for 5.recent survey 6.festive time 7.wise men 8.part-
 time job 9.Chistmas Eve 10.future career 11.online romance 12. belonged to (extra: major success)
Ex. 5 1.მოზრდილი ადამიანი 2.პატივისცემა 3.უხეში 4.გაუმჯობესება 5.მიმტანი ქალი 6.პროცენტი
 7.უპასუხისმგებლო 8.განმავლობაში 9.ხარისხი 10.ძებნა 11.ზიანის მომტანი
 12.მნიშვნელოვანი 13.ამაღლელებელი 14.ელექტრონული ფოსტა/იმიელი 5.ეკრანი 16.კოსმოსური
 ხომალდი, საფრენი აპარატი 17.სროლა/გადაღება (ფილმის) 18.ძალადობა 19. საჩუქარი 20.სამკაული
 21.ბრძენი 22.გამომეტყველება 23.სავარცხელი/თმის სარჭი 24.გვირგვინი 25.მომსახურება
 26.მაცურებელი 27.ბერი 28.ინდაური 29.კაკალი/ნიგოზი 30.ნუში

UNIT 9 HAVE YOU GOT A TALENT?

- Ex. 1** b
Ex. 2 1. Pamela 2.Pamela 3. Sandro 4.Penny 5.Sandro 6.Penny/Pamela
Ex. 3 2.e 3.g 4.a 5.d 6.f 7.b

Ex. 4

| | | | | | | |
|-----------|---------|------------|-------------|-----------|------------|-----------|
| Noun | nature | success | fashion | ambition | art/artist | desire |
| Adjective | natural | successful | fashionable | ambitious | artidstic | desirable |

- Ex. 5** Goga: 1.desire 2.artistic 3.drama club 4.enjoy 5.desire 6.ambitious (extra:artist)
 Tiko: 1.professional 2.ambitious 3.makes 4.travelling 5.held 6.fashionable (extra: ambition)
Ex. 6 2. True 3.Not true 4.True 5. True 6. Not true 7. True.
Ex. 7 2. concerts 3.cousin 4.mother 5.boyfriend 6.talented

Tapescript (Key to ex. 7 are underlined>)

She loves singing and she loves dancing. Britney has got thousands of fans all over the world. They think she is perfect, but Britney says, "I am just a normal girl. I have boyfriend problems and I worry about how I look. I'm not perfect. I don't like my hair or my teeth. I want to change them."

What does Britney look like? Well, she's got long blond hair and she wears a lot of beautiful clothes. She travels a lot and gives concerts all over the world.

Britney's family home is a three-bedroom house in Kentwood. Kentwood is a small town in the state of Louisiana in the USA. Her best friend is her cousin, Laura Lynne. Britney says her mother is her friend too. She likes to write songs with her mother. Britney's a singer but she can do other things too. For example, she acts in films and writes songs. She is a good dancer. In one concert she danced with her boyfriend.

Britney comes from a very talented family. She's got a younger sister who also wants to be a famous singer.

- Ex. 8** 2. have/'ve been singing 3. has/'s been living 4. has/'s been leaving 5. has /'s been coming
 6. has/'s he been doing 7. has/'s been playing 8.has been practising
Ex. 9 2. How long have you been chatting? 3.How long have you known Sophie? 4.How long has she been
 learning Chinese. 5. How long have you been here? 6.How long has Tiko been playing the violin?
Ex. 10 2. have been working 3. have been travelling 4. have been 5. has been 6. have learnt
 7. haven't managed 8. have been trying 9. have learnt

UNIT 10 A NOBEL PRIZE WINNER

Ex. 2 2.A 3.D 4.E 5.B 6.C

Ex. 3 2.after graduation from school 3.in 1918 4.In the mid-30s 5.The Old Man and the Sea 6.in Cuba

Ex. 4 2.g 3.d 4.a 5.c 6.e 7.b

Ex. 5 2.f 3.a 4.e 5.d 6.b

Ex. 6 2.experience 3.popular 4.awarded 5.winner 6.translated 7.stories 8. respected (extra: writer)

Ex. 7. Not heard: an ambulance driver.

Ex. 8 2.b 3.b 4.c 5.a 6.b 7.b

Tapescript (Key to ex. 7 are underlined)

Alfred Nobel was born on October 21, 1833 in Stockholm, in Sweden. He was the third son of Swedish inventor called Immanuel Nobel. All three sons worked in their father's business, which was making explosives. Alfred invented dynamite, an explosive which is used in the building of roads, railroads and canals. He became very rich from the sales of his explosives.

Nobel did not want his name to be connected to explosives and dynamite only. Because of his interest in peace, science and literature Nobel put his money into a fund. Nobel said that the money in this fund would go to people who were outstanding in their professions.

Alfred Nobel died on December the 10th, 1896. A few years after his death the Nobel Foundation of Stockholm was established. The first prizes were awarded in 1901 in the field of physics, chemistry, medicine, literature and peace. The amount of each award was \$ 30 000 then. Now the each award is worth \$ 400 000. Prizes are awarded once a year. Each prize may be shared among two or three winners, and it is possible to win twice. Ernest Hemingway was awarded the Nobel Prize for literature for his novel *The Old Man and the Sea* in 1954.

Ex. 10 **Present Simple Passive:** are invited, is done, are established, is watched

Past Simple Passive: were sold, was awarded, was formed

Future Simple Passive: will be sent, will be written, will be divided

Ex. 11 2.was used by Dima for one week 3.was awarded a special prize 4.will show this film on TV tomorrow

5.was paid to him 6.will be taken (by me) to Mtskheta tomorrow. 7.invited fifteen people to the show.

UNIT 11 WHICH TV CHANNEL DO YOU WATCH?

Ex. 2 2.BBC 1 3.Both 4.(At) 7:35 5.Media TV 6. (At) 7:00

Ex. 4 1,2,3,5,8 are true.

Ex. 5 2.channel 3.viewers 4.entertainment 5.broadcasting 6.series 7.investor 8. is prohibited 9.income 10.advertisements/commercials

Ex. 6 2.broadcasts 3. advertisements 4.viewers 5.prohibited 6.income 7.channel 8.the Internet (extra: country)

Ex. 7 2. broadcast 3. earn 4.advertisements 5.offered 6.educational 7.channels 8.degree (extra: private)

Ex. 9 not heard: every evening, a hard job

Ex. 10 2.ten 3.7.30/ half past seven 4.goes to the cinema, plays football and sees his friends

5.goes to the theatre, watches TV and listens to music 6.being free (without having responsibilities).

7.being with her friends 8.appearance 9.future (doesn't know what she wants to be)

10.his brother and David Beckham 11.her mum 12. one hour 13.two hours

Tapescript (Key to ex. 9 are underlined)

Reporter: We at Crown want to know about the life of 15-year-olds all over the world! This time we talk to Alex from London and Fleur from France.

Reporter: What time do you both have to be at home in the evening?

Alex: 9 o'clock during the week, but at the weekend its 10 o'clock.

Fleur: For me it's 7.30 every day.

Reporter: And what do you do in your free time?

Fleur: I go to the theatre, I watch TV and I listen to music.

Alex: Well, I go to the cinema quite a lot. And I play football. And see my friends

Reporter: What do you like best about being 15?

Alex: I like being free without having responsibilities.

Fleur: I like being with my friends.

Reporter: What do you worry about?

Fleur: I worry about my future. I don't know what I want to be.

Alex: About my appearance.

Reporter: Whom do you admire most - is your role model?

Alex: My brother and David Beckham.

Fleur: My mum

Reporter: How many hours do you spend on your homework?

Fleur: Two hours a day. When I'm getting ready for a test, it can be three hours.

Alex: One hour a day. Five hours a week.

- Ex. 11** a. Tina has to get up early on week days.... b. Tina doesn't have to make her bed....
c. Tina doesn't have to be at home at 9 o'clock every evening.... d. Tina has to wear a school uniform....
e. Tina doesn't have to go straight home after classes.... f. Tina doesn't have to go to school on Saturdays
- Ex. 12** 2. had to 3. has to 4. must/have to 5. will have to 6. must 7. had to

UNIT 12 WEATHER.COM

Ex. 3 sentences 2, 3, 5, 6, 7 are true

Ex. 4 A.3 B.1

Ex. 5 2.F 3.F 4.F 5.T 6.T 7.F

Ex. 6 2.measure temperature 3.weather forecast 4.cloudy sky 5.changable weather 6.shower/light rain
7.there is a chance of snow 8.the driest month 9.mild climate

Ex. 7 2.changable 3. quite 4.typical 5.seaside 6.measure 7.used 8.forecast (extra: west)

Ex. 8 2.behind 3.cold 4.sunset 5.temperatures 6.sleep 7.brought 8.over 9. Antarctica (extra: north)

Ex. 9 Forecast 3 corresponds to the postcard.

Tapescript (Key to ex. 9 are underlined)

1. The weather for today October 14th. It's going to stay cloudy throughout the day and there is rain on the way. It's going to become windier and cooler –we'll need warm clothes today...12 degrees Celsius is the highest for today I'm afraid.

2. And now today's weather. After a cold, wet and windy morning, it's going to clear up. Should be quite a fine warm afternoon, maybe a bit windy, with highs of 17 or 18 degrees. And that's the weather.

3. The weather forecast at midday. After a sunny morning, the clouds are building up and there's a 70% chance of showers later. It will still be a bit cold though. At least the breeze will stay quite light, but temperatures will be down to about 4 degrees Celsius.

- Ex. 10** 2.I don't think you should smoke. 3.I think you should study hard. 4.I don't think you should get married.
5.I think you should stay in bed. 6.I think you should get up earlier.

REVISION THREE UNITS 9-12

Ex. 1 2.has already read 3.have planted/have been planting 4.has never worn 5.have you been waiting?
6.have been working 7.hasn't been 8.has been wearing 9.have you been 10.has repaired
11.have Jack and Jill been married? 12. have not/haven't seen

Ex. 2 2.were arrested 3.will be elected 4.is used 5.were announced 6.will be asked 7.was it translated
8.was built 9.was elected 10.was reconstructed 11.is spoken 12.is announced

Ex. 3 2.should/had better 3.mustn't 4.has to 5.should/had better 6.have to 7.don't have to/have to 8.had better
9.shouldn't 10.don't have to 11.mustn't 12. should

Ex. 4 2.gained... experience 3.seeks success 4.writing career 5.major success 6.are awarded
7.After graduation 8.am inspired 9.is ..prohibited 10.is...changeable 11.ambulance driver
12.strong desire (extra: programmes for entertainment)

Ex. 5 2.არტისტული 3.რეპორტიორი 4.შხაპუნა წვიმა 5.არხი 6.ნიჭი, ტალანტი 7.შხატვარი
8.საყვარელი 9.რეკლამა/რეკლამირება 10.სწრაფვა, დიდი სურვილი 11.მოდური 12.ბენდი
13.გამოცდილება 14.ჯილდო 15.ტანჯვა 16.ძირითადი, ყველაზე მნიშვნელოვანი 17.ძვირფასი

18.შეძენა, მიღება 19.ცვალებადი 20.მაყურებელი 21.აკრძალვა 22.ტრანსლაცია 23.შემოსავალი
24.სერიალი 25.სველი, ნესტიანი 26.მშრალი 27.რბილი 28.გაზომვა 29.ხანგრძლივობა
30.ამინდის პროგნოზი

UNIT 13 MOVIE LEGENDS

- Ex. 3** 1.e 2.a 3.d 4.b (extra:c)
Ex. 4 2.Charlie Chaplin 3.Leonardo DiCaprio 4.Marilyn Monroe 5.Elizabeth Taylor 6.Marilyn Monroe
Ex. 5 2.f 3.g 4.a 5.c 6.e 7.d 8.b
Ex. 6 2.g 3.a 4.c / e / b 5.d 6.f 7 h
Ex. 7 2.actor 3.appeared 4.movie 5.star 6.career 7.awards 8.fans 9.legend (extra: role)
Ex. 9 3, 4, 5 are true

Tapescript (Key to ex. 9 are underlined)

Interviewer: *What's it like to be in a Bond film? One person who knows is the actor Thomas Wheatley. He appeared in The Living Daylights as a British agent who helps 007 on a mission in Vienna. The first thing we'd like to know, Thomas, is how you got the part.*

Thomas Wheatley: *Well, it was all very simple, really. The casting director had seen me in a BBC TV play. She asked me to come along for an interview where I just had a chat with the producer, director and writer. There was no screen-test or anything. Then a few hours later they rang to say I'd got the part. It was my first film, so of course I was pretty excited.*

Interviewer: *What happened, step-by-step, before you started filming?*

Thomas Wheatley: *Well, the script arrived almost immediately. Then the next step was signing the contract. And after that the costumes were made. I needed seven different suits.*

Interviewer: *Where did you shoot your scenes?*

Thomas Wheatley: *In two places. We spent two weeks on location in Vienna, then we did all the interior scenes at Pinewood Studios near London.*

Interviewer: *What was it like to work with Timothy Dalton?*

Thomas Wheatley: *Very easy. It was his first Bond film, so he must have been nervous, but it didn't show. He was completely relaxed while we were filming. Very funny, too. I enjoyed working with him a lot.*

Interviewer: *People say that the "crew" on Bond films are like a family. Is that true?*

Thomas Wheatley: *Absolutely. They've all worked together so often before, you see - that's the secret. But it's not just that - they're all very polite and generous, too. They make 'new boys' like me feel very welcome.*

Interviewer: *Finally, what was the premiere like? It was at the Odeon in Leicester Square, wasn't it?*

Thomas Wheatley: *That's right. Oh it was a lot of fun. The Prince and Princess of Wales were the guests of honour, so everybody was dressed-up. They even named Leicester Square, "James Bond Square" for the evening.*

Interviewer: *It must have been strange, watching yourself up there on a big screen.*

Thomas Wheatley: *It was. Wonderful, too, though. In fact I enjoyed the whole thing - being in The Living Daylights I mean - from beginning to end.*

Interviewer: *Well, thanks for talking to us Thomas, and good luck in the future.*

Thomas Wheatley: *Thanks.*

- Ex. 10** 2.What time does the match start? 3.Shall we go for a walk? 4.How much does this book cost?
5.Did it rain last week? 6.Have you ever been to Rome? 7.How often do you go to the cinema?
Ex. 11 2.When did he produce his first Mickey Mouse cartoon? 3.Who fell in love with this cartoon character?
4.What did Disney create three years later? 5.Who helped him to draw thousands of pictures for 'Snow White and the Seven Dwarfs'? 6. When did Walt Disney die? 7.How many visitors do these fantasy parks receive every year?

UNIT 14 DEAR MARI....

- Ex. 2** Yes
Ex. 3 2. Thank you very much for... 3. I'm writing to invite you... 4.Love
5. It sounds great!/ I'd love to come with you ... 6. Best wishes
Ex. 4 Starting a letter: a, d Ending a letter: b, c, e, f
Ex. 5 b, f
Ex. 6 2.e 3.f 4.c 5.a 6.b 7.g
Ex. 7 2.offer 3.access 4/5: indoor/outdoor or outdoor/indoor 6.friendly 7. café. 8.couple (extra: relax)
Ex. 8 1.use 2.been 3.we 4.fond of 5.have 6.looking forward (extras: much, remember)
Ex. 9 1.Canal Café Theatre 2.Donmar Theatre 3.Empire Theatre 4.Brixton Theatre

Ex. 10

| | | | | |
|-------------------------------------|--------------------|----------------|----------------|-----------------|
| Which theatre: | Canal Café Theatre | Donmar Theatre | Empire Theatre | Brixton Theatre |
| allows the audience to participate? | V | | | |
| has high quality performances? | | V | | |
| is a beautiful old theatre? | | | V | |
| has the largest stage in Europe? | | | | V |
| serves food? | V | | | |
| was rather uncomfortable? | | V | | |

Tapescript (Key to ex. 9 are underlined)

Now I would like to tell you about one or two places you might like to go during the week you are staying in London. The first is the Canal Café Theatre which is a sort of small theatre. It's quite central, and the nearest tube station is Warwick Avenue. They don't do ordinary plays there, they do more comedy and music and things, sometimes with the audience joining in. There's usually a great atmosphere there. And they even serve food during the evening.

Another place which has got a reputation for high quality performances is the Donmar Theatre. This little theatre in Covent Garden also used to be famous for its very uncomfortable seating! But they've done some work on it and now it's much improved and well worth visiting.

If you like the idea of seeing today's performers on yesterday's stage, then you should try and get to the Empire Theatre. This is a great old theatre. Inside it's just beautiful, all gold and red. At the Hackney Empire you can see one-man shows by well-known television actors and comedians, as well as groups who are popular with local audiences. The best way to get there, from the centre of London, is to catch a train to London Fields.

I also have to mention Brixton Theatre, which is also a very interesting place. It's in Brixton, of course, and it's got the largest stage in Europe. They get all the top international names in rock music and dance.

Lastly you might consider the Drill Hall Arts Centre where, as well as food and drink, they offer courses and classes on modern art, and you can watch a play or some kind of performance which will certainly be something quite new and....

- Ex. 11** 3. Did you invite/Have you invited Irakli and Ann? 4. Do you have a headache?
5. Have you bought a key-holder? 6. Did you telephone your mother? 7. Was the hotel expensive?
- Ex. 12** 2. if/whether I had seen the robbers. 3. ...asked if/whether I had heard any noise. 4. The police officer asked if/whether I was sleeping at 2 a.m. 5. The police officer asked if/whether I had called the police. 6. The police officer asked if/whether this had ever happened before.

UNIT 15 DIARIES - OUR SECRET FRIENDS

- Ex. 1** Yes
Ex. 2 2. afford 3. secrets 4. pop concert 5. \$500 6. go travelling
Ex. 3 2. Wednesday 3. Tuesday 4. Friday 5. Monday 6. Thursday
Ex. 4 2. f 3. g 4. a 5. c 6. b 7. e

Ex. 5

| | | | | | | |
|-----------|-----------|------------|-----------|----------|------------|------------|
| Noun | happiness | disaster | beauty | talent | brilliance | success |
| Adjective | happy | disastrous | beautiful | talented | brilliant | successful |

- Ex. 6** 2. rely on 3. jealous 4. disastrous 5. make fun of 6. hang out 7. trendy (extra: volunteer)
Ex. 7 charity – ქველმოქმედება competition – შეჯიბრი developing countries – განვითარებადი ქვეყნები
lottery – ლატარია support – მხარის დაჭერა unemployed – უმუშევარი
Ex. 8 2. Giorgi 3. Teodor 4. Isabel 5. Giorgi 6. Giorgi 7. Isabel

Tapescript (Key to ex. 8 are underlined)

Isabel

It must be wonderful to win lots of money in a competition or a lottery. Wonderful, but frightening, too. Just think about it. One day you're an ordinary person - the next you're a millionaire. BANG! Just like that. Personally I wouldn't change the way I live. OK, I'd buy presents for my family and things like that, but I'd put 90 per cent of the money in the bank. Why? Because I think you have to be careful with money - not spend it like water. Anyway, if I started to act like Madonna or Michael Jackson I might lose all my friends and I don't want that.

Giorgi

I know exactly what I'd do with a lot of money. I'd buy a big house with a swimming pool for my mum and dad. Why would I do that? Because it's something they've always wanted and never been able to afford, that's why.

Especially now ... you see, my dad is unemployed at the moment. He used to work in a car factory, but two years ago the company closed and he lost his job. Since then he and my mum haven't had much money. She works in a supermarket, so that helps a bit, but it's not really enough. Which is why if I had a lot of money I'd buy them a big house. It would be great to make their dream come true - really great. Then I'd probably travel for a while because I've always wanted to see places like Australia and Hawaii. Still, it's not going to happen, is it? Life's not like that.

Teodor

I'd give most of the money to charity. I think I'd support organisations like "Save The Children" which help poor people in developing countries. That way the money could make a real difference to many lives. You see, there's so much to be done in developing countries now. Millions and millions of people need food, clean water, medicine, clothes, schools.... Compared to them I don't need a million dollars at all - I'm already a millionaire.

Ex. 9 2.ask for 3.rely on 4.kept away 5.compare with 6.share with

Ex. 10 2.looked on/looked at 3.go in /go to 4.compare for /compare with 5.worry on/worry about
6.protect for/protect from 7.ask on/ask for

UNIT 16 WONDERS OF NATURE

Ex.3 2.45 min. 3.By passages 4. In 1925 5.Settlement of a primitive man/Footprints of a dinosaur
6. An environmentalist (from Kutaisi) 7.200

Ex.4 2.lies/ is situated 3.settlement 4.dissolve 5.waterfall 6.comparatively 7.footprints 8.preserve

Ex.5 2.soft 3.the same 4.primitive 5.recently 6.hard/difficult

Ex.6 2.long 3.high 4.height 5.underground 6.natural 7.changes 8.discovered (extra: cave)

Ex.7 words heard: wind storms speed clouds building damage (extra: sun, rivers)

Ex.8 2. b 3. b 4. b 5. b 6. a 7. a

Tapescript (Key to ex. 8 are underlined)

Reporter: *Kathleen, I've never heard Kansas was so famous for its tornadoes*

Kathleen: *I am not surprised. if somebody mentions 'Kansas' you might think of wheat, since millions of tons of wheat are produced there. Or you might think of sunflowers. After all Kansas is known as the Sunflower State. But the State of Kansas is probably most famous for its tornadoes. Tornadoes are not new in Kansas. They have always been common in that part of the continent, and the name of the state in fact comes from the Kansa Indians who lived there, and it means "the people of the south wind."*

Reporter: *So what are tornados?*

Kathleen: *Well, in fact, they are very violent storms with winds that are so fast that they form a cylinder of cloud. This is why they are also known as "twisters." The cloud, made by winds that rotate at a speed of up to 500 kilometres an hour, goes downwards from the huge clouds of a severe thunderstorm.*

Reporter: *How does a tornado pass and what damage can it cause?*

Kathleen: *A tornado usually passes through an area quickly, but it often causes enormous damage. One tornado was so powerful that a complete school building was destroyed, while the 85 students who had been inside it were carried more than 100 metres, without any of them being killed! In another tornado, five cars were lifted off their tracks and raised up into the air!*

Reporter: *Thank you Kathleen. Now let's move on to our next ...*

Ex.9 a. words with a prefix: disinterested impolite disbelieve impractical

b. words with a suffix: tactful manageable countable mouthful powerful

Ex.10 2.dis- 3.im- 4.dis- 5.-ful 6.im- 7.- able

REVISION FOUR UNITS 13-16

Ex.1 2.She asked him if / whether it was a difficult part to play. 3.She asked him if / whether he was similar to Mr. Smith in any way. 4.She asked him if / whether it was interesting to work with Angelina Jolie. 5.She asked him if / whether he sometimes got fan letters. 6.She asked him if / whether his fans recognized him in the street. 8.Was the premier at the Odeon? 9.Where did you shoot the scenes? 10.What do you like best about being a famous actor? 11.Is Mr. Smith your best-loved character? 12.Have you ever won an Oscar?

- Ex.2** 2.manageable 3.impractical 4.disbelief 5.tactful 6.disinterested 7.powerful 8.countable
9.impolite 10.dishonest 11.helpful 12.disagree
- Ex.3** 2.i 3.g 4.j 5.a 6.k 7.l 8.e 9.b 10.d 11.h 12.f
- Ex.4** 2. have access 3.rely on 4.hangs out 5. have drinks and snacks 6.sports facilities 7.a couple of hours
8. acting career 9.won awards 10.made fun of 11.leisure centre 12.complete disaster
(extra: trendy shops)
- Ex.5** 2.დასვენება 3.მანანნალა 4.კომიკოსი 5.გმირი 6.ჩახუტება 7.შურიანი, ეჭვიანი 8.კორტი
9.აღფრთოვანებული 10. მოხალისეები 11. ნიჭიერი 12.ლეგენდა 13.ჩანჩქერი 14.დაშლა/დნობა
15.სიმპათიური 16.მარცხი 17.გამოქვაბული 18.აღმოჩენა 19.დასახლება 20.საიდუმლოებით მოცული
21.განლაგებული 22.მოდური 23.ნაფეხურები 24.ნაკრძალი 25.შედარებით 26.უზარმაზარი/
გიგანტური 27.ნახემსება 28.რეჟისორი 29.კარიერა 30.სპორტული დარბაზი

UNIT 17 CAN YOU COOK?

- Ex.2** 2.A 3.F 4.B 5.E 6.C
- Ex.4** Toffee Apple: b.1 a.2 e. 3 c.4 d.5 Omelette: b.1 a.2 c. 3 4.e d.5
- Ex.5** 1.d 2.c 3.a 4.b
- Ex.6** 2.preheat 3.freshly ground 4.sour cream 5.sprinkle over 6.cut into rings
7.add pepper to season
- Ex.7** 2. a 3. f 4.g 5. e 6. c 7. d
- Ex.8** 2.roll 3 twist 4. tray 5. brown 6 serve (extra: sprinkle)
- Ex.9** heard: cooking class, cookery book, made biscuits, smelt great, salads and meat,
hamburgers (not heard: chop onions, serve hot)
- Ex.10** 2.T 3.T 4.T 5.T 6.F 7.T

Tapescript (Key to ex. 9 are underlined>)

Interviewer: Did you cook when you were a child?

Chef: I did. As a very young child I cooked for my family and I enjoyed it. By the time I got to cooking class in school I was asking the teachers for information about cooking and recipes. My parents both worked so I cooked dinner for them and I loved to buy and read cookery books.

Interviewer: What made you decide you would become a professional cook?

Chef: I remember a child's book called "Little Richard." In the book the two characters made biscuits and those biscuits looked pretty good. But I had no recipe, so I just made them up and it worked! I don't think they were all that nice to eat but they smelt great. I was about 13.

Interviewer: What is your truly favourite food?

Chef: I just love vegetables. I am fond of making different salads seasoned with pepper and spices. I also like meat especially juicy beef steaks which is my specialty by the way. Yum!

Interviewer: When at home, what do you like to eat?

Chef: Well, the food from my web-site is my best treat. There is nothing like experimenting on yourself with food. But I do try to stay healthy and eat lots of salads and meat. I'm quite fond of chips and hamburgers but not after 5pm.

Interviewer: Thanks for the interview.

- Ex.11** 2.Wrong: Irakli will talk to you as soon as the match is over. 3.Wrong: You will like our new teacher when you see him. 4. correct 5.Wrong: Don't go! Wait until it is ready. 6.Wrong: I will see you when I arrive.
7.correct.
- Ex.12** 2. I won't /will not send the parcel until I hear from you. 3. As soon as they phone me, I'll/will contact you.
4. When I talk to the teacher I'll/will give him your news. 5. I'll/will send a postcard, when I get to London.
6. As soon as I hear results, I'll/will let you know. 7. When my parents find out about it, there will be trouble.
8. When his grandma hears about it, she'll/will be pleased.

UNIT 18 YOU ARE WHAT YOU EAT

- Ex.2** 2.Good 3.Bad 4.Bad 5.Bad
- Ex.3** 2.T 3.F 4.T 5.T 6.F 7.T
- Ex.4** 2.take action 3.mint tea 4.digestive system 5.fizzy drinks 6.Asian medicine 7.poor quality meals
8.to remedy the problem

- Ex.5** 2.f 3.g 4.a 5.h 6.i 7.b 8.d 9.c
Ex.6 2.weight 3.pale 4.low energy 5.fizzy 6.digestive system 7.take action
Ex.8 2.T 3.T 4.F 5.T 6.F 7.T
Ex.9 2. vegetables 3.on a full stomach 4.low fat 5.low fat milk/water 6.exercise 7.TV/computer

Tapescript (Key to ex. 9 are underlined)

Making your body healthy: An interview with a health specialist

Today in our studio we have Steven Dowson, who is a well-known nutritionist. He will be answering some of the questions that have been sent in by teenagers. They are worried about their health, and they are especially worried about being fat!

The first question for Dr Dowson is: Can I go on a diet even if I haven't asked a doctor about it?

Dr D: Yes, of course you can. In fact, even without seeing a doctor, you can choose food that will help you to slim, and keep you healthy. Instead of eating chips when you get home from school, you can have a fruit or some vegetables. And try not to eat too much late at night. It's not good to go to bed on a full stomach.

Q: Which kinds of food and drink would you advise teenagers to buy?

Dr D: It's really quite simple. Just buy products which are low-fat – which don't have much fat in them. Fat-free yogurt for example, or Pepsi light. When you're thirsty, drink low-fat milk or just plain water. Fizzy fruit drinks contain many calories and sugar. So they are not very healthy.

Q: What else should we do to build a healthy body?

Dr D: Well, another thing to remember is that exercise will help you feel better, and look better. Regular exercise builds your muscles and helps you get rid of calories and fat. So it also makes you lose weight, and look slimmer. But remember: it takes time. Jogging for an hour once a year won't make any difference. But regular jogging – say twice a week – will make a big difference. Actually, whether you go on a diet or not, exercising and healthy eating are excellent ways to keep your body in shape. You could also spend less time in front of the TV or your computer. So get moving! And be healthy!

- Ex.10** 2.I will call you if I have time. 3.If the class is full, we will find another one. 4.What will you do if the taxi doesn't come. 5.I will ask Peter if I see him tomorrow. 6.I will go to Istanbul next week if I get a plane ticket. 7.If he calls me 'lazy' again I will get angry.

UNIT 19 LET'S GO SHOPPING

- Ex.2** Two
Ex.3 2.Because it's a pair of designer trousers 3.Medium 4.In the changing rooms 5. A jumper 6.Because it's a special offer 7.In cash
Ex.4 2.S 3.S 4.C 5.S 6.C 7.S 8.S
Ex.5 2.leather 3.The jeans fit you 4.tight 5.loose 6.try on 7.take advantage 8.cash 9.customer 10. These jeans would suit you
Ex.6 2.d 3.b 4.e 5.f 6.a
Ex.7 2.tried on 3.fit 4.tight 5.decided 6.leather 7.cash 8.suits (extra: slim)
Ex.8 CDs hair gel a stereo radio
Ex.9 1.CDs 2.hair gel 3.a stereo radio 4.CDs 5.hair gel

Tapescript (Key to ex. 9 are underlined)

Advert 1

Interested in the latest CDs? Why not check out our prices. We have the most up-to-date CDs in town. All the most popular singers and bands for prices starting at 2 Laris. And even cheaper for students. We have special student prices on all our stock. This offer won't last long! So don't miss out on this fantastic opportunity. Visit our shop now! You won't be sorry!

Advert 2

Has your life become a nightmare because of your hair? Is your bathroom full of hair care products that you've tried but

which just don't work for you? Why not try Freeze-away from Schwarzkopf, a new hair gel which will make your hair look shiny, soft and beautiful. And with Freeze-away, you are always in control of your hair, even if it's unruly. The good news is: we're giving away free samples of this wonderful product this afternoon. Right here in the town centre. Why not come along?

Advert 3

We can offer you a radio at the amazing price of 80 Laris. So why not grab this chance? You get clear sounds and easy-to-tune stations at a price that suits your pocket. This is the future of home entertainment, so don't stay in the past. Hurry! This special offer will last one week only. And don't forget: You will have your money back if you're not completely satisfied. What are you waiting for?

- Ex.10** 2.would / უფრო ხშირად გავიდოდა გარეთ, მეტი თავისუფალი დრო რომ ჰქონდეს; 3.studied / უფრო მეტი რომ მემეცადინა, უკეთეს ნიშნებს მივიღებდი; 4.would / რომ არ წვიმდეს, საცურაოდ წავიდოდით; 5.didn't / მართას ძალი ეყოლებოდა, ბინაში რომ არ ცხოვრობდეს; 6.didn't / ასეთი მსუქანი არ იქნებოდა, ამდენს რომ არ ჭამდეს; 7.wasn't / საათი ასე ძვირი რომ არ იყოს, ვიყიდდი.
- Ex.11** 2.would be 3.would spend 4.would swim 5.would be 6.would eat 7.would drink 8.could take 9.would ask 10.would have 11.wouldn't like

UNIT 20 QUICK SHOPPING GUIDE

- Ex.1** b
Ex.2 2.Central Gallery of Antique carpets 3.Georgian Arts Store, Dry Bridge Flea Market, Art Salon Khelovani 4.Georgian Arts Store 5.Georgian Arts and Culture Centre Store 6.Art Salon Khelovani
Ex.3 2.a 3.f 4.c 5.b 6.d 7.h 8.e
Ex.4

| | | | | | | |
|-----------|-------------|------------|-----------|-------------|--------|-------------|
| Noun | tradition | reason | wonder | interest | fame | mountain |
| Adjective | traditional | reasonable | wonderful | interesting | famous | mountainous |

| | | | | | | |
|-----------|------------|----------|-------------|------------|---------|--------|
| Noun | ტრადიცია | მიზეზი | საოცრება | ინტერესი | სახელი | მთა |
| Adjective | ტრადიციული | მისაღები | შესანიშნავი | საინტერესო | ცნობილი | მთიანი |

- Ex.5** 2.find 3.artists 4.visit 5.arts 6.ceramics 7.carpets 8.reasonable (extra: crystal, icon)
Ex.6 2.suits 3.trouble 4.pair 5.already 6.be 7.suit 8.fit
Ex.7 2.I wish I could find my English book. 3.I wish I wasn't/weren't afraid of dogs. 4.I wish I could go on holiday/I wish I could afford to go on holiday. 5.I wish I didn't have so much homework to do. 6.I wish I had some free time.
Ex.8 2.lived 3.didn't feel 4.stayed 5.had 6.had 7.were

REVISION FIVE UNITS 17-20

- Ex. 1** 2.will bake 3.took 4.wouldn't be 5.don't stop 6.wouldn't tell 7.will go 8.met 9.doesn't rain 10.drinks 11.won't be 12.would buy
Ex. 2 2.went 3.didn't rain 4.could 5.knew 6.didn't sit 7.could 8.didn't have to 9.I were 10.didn't have 11.were 12.didn't tell
Ex. 3 2.rains 3.are/will phone 4.comes 5.arrives/will be 6.is 7.grow/will change 8.won't leave/give 9.arrives/will let 10.meet/will write 11.don't leave/come 12.get/will send
Ex. 4 2.pop into/pop in 3.still water 4.personal experience 5.Asian medicine 6.take advantage 7.digestive system 8.freshly ground 9.reasonable price 10.sour cream 11.fizzy drinks 12.tried on (extra: milk products)
Ex. 5 2.ბროლი/ბროლის 3.მარილიანი 4.ენა 5.ხელის თითის ფრჩხილი 6.ანტიკვარული ნივთები 7.ნაღდი ფული 8.სალათის ფურცელი 9.სუფრაზე მიტანა 10.მორევა 11.პიტნა 12.თირკმელები 13.ისპანახი 14.გაცხელება 15.ცომი 16.დეტეოლოგი 17.მომხმარებელი 18.რეცეპტი 19.ფერმკრთალი/მკრთალი 20.დაშხეფება 21.გათლა/კანი 22.ტყავი/ტყავის 23.ვინრო/მოჭერილი (ტანსაცმელი) 24.ფართო (ტანსაცმელი) 25.მოხდენა 26.მორევა 27.ხატები 28.კერამიკა 29.საგანძური 30. ხელნაკეთი საგნები

UNIT 21 EVERY CITY TELLS A STORY

- Ex.3** 2.Yes 3.Yes 4.No 5.Yes 6.Yes 7.No
Ex.4 2.Batumi 3.Batumi 4.Rome 5.Istanbul 6.Istanbul
Ex.5 2.a mosque 3.fascinating 4.indifferent 5.fortresses
Ex.6 2.enormous arena 3.art masterpieces 4.city's highlights 5.Christian Orthodox church
6.narrow strait 7.impressive mountains
Ex.7 2.highlights 3.sights 4.masterpieces 5.enormous/impressive 6.impressive/fascinating
7.fascinating/ impressive (extras: indifferent, mosques)
Ex.8 Words heard: hunting legend Muslim mosque Orthodox churches pheasant sword
synagogue warm springs
Ex.9 2.site 3.view 4.certainly 5.synagoge 6.religious 7.worth

Tapescript (Key to ex. 9 are underlined)

According to a legend Tbilisi was founded in the 5th century by King Vakhtang Gorgasali. While hunting the King shot a pheasant which fell into a warm spring and was boiled. The king decided to found a city on the site.

You can get a very beautiful view of the city if you climb to the top of the Narikala Fortress which overlooks the river. There, on your left, you will certainly notice the colossal statue of the country's matriarch, looking down from a hilltop greeting visitors with a bowl of wine and enemies - with a sword.

In no other place will you see a synagogue, an Armenian church, a Catholic church, and a Muslim mosque.... all located on a single spot together with several Orthodox churches. Many of these religious structures contain superb paintings and architecture, and are all worth visiting.

- Ex.10** 2.more carefully / the most carefully 3.more lonely / the most lonely 4.harder / the hardest
5.more seriously / the most seriously 6.more beautifully / the most beautifully 7.higher / the highest
8.better / the best 9.worse /the worst 10.later / the latest
Ex.11 2.run as fast as 3.as early as we 4.stories better than 5.work harder than 6.more than
Ex.12 2.badly 3.better 4.worse 5.harder 6.the best

UNIT 22 LET'S GO ON A CITY TOUR

- Ex.1** Places Giorgi has seen: London Bridge Westminster Abbey Buckingham Palace The Tower
St Paul's Cathedral
Ex.2 2.No 3.No 4.Yes 5.Yes 6.No 7.No
Ex.3 2.Because there are so many things to see. / Because there are so many sights. 3.It was a lovely day. /
The weather was lovely. 4.(He can't get used to) the traffic on the left. 5.(He gets) an book of Britain.
6.(He is visiting) Scotland.
Ex.4 2.a 3.g 4.b 5.c 6.e 7.d
Ex.5 2...the right decision. 3... a few masterpieces. 4...was really exciting. 5... was lovely yesterday.
6...at the top of the hill.
Ex.6 2centre 3.sightseeing 4.sights 5.double-decker bus 6.visit 7.open-air 8.get used to
(extras: crash and guide)
Ex.7 The phrases heard: single or return, here you are, a two-hour journey, the next train
Ex.8 2.She wants a single ticket. 3.£33 / 33 pounds 4.Platform 3 5.2 hours / It's a two-hour journey.
6.At 8.10

Tapescript (Key to ex. 7 are underlined)

- A ticket to Liverpool, please.
- Single or return?
- Single, please.
- That's thirty-three pounds please.

- Here you are. What time is the next train?
- There's one at ten past every hour. So the next one is in twenty minutes.
- Which platform is it?
- Platform 3.
- And what time does the next train get to Liverpool?
- Well, it's a two-hour journey. So the next one arrives in Liverpool at 8.10.
- Thank you very much.

Ex. 9 2.will be stopping 3.will be going 4.will be teaching 5.will also be doing 6.will be taking part

Ex.10 2.All the pupils will be studying for three hours a day. 3.The children will be eating some strange food.
4.The children will be seeing lots of exotic animals in the Amazon. 5.The children will be visiting lots of interesting places. 6.The children will be learning lots of new things on the boat.

UNIT 23 OLYMPIC CHAMPIONS

Ex.1 Nona Gaprindashvili: chess; Lasha Talakhadze: wightlifting; Lasha Bekauri: judo; Nino Salukvadze: Olympic shooting

Ex.3 2.Nona Gaprindashvili 3.Both 4.Lasha Talakhadze 5.Both 6.Both 7.Lasha Talakhadze

Ex.4 2.f 3.e 4.h 5.g 6.d 7.b 8.a

Ex.5 2.g 3.a 4.b 5.c 6.d 7.f 8. h

Ex.6 2.bright future 3.was training 4.satisfied with 5.gold medal 6.was in good shape
7.remained (extra: tournament)

Ex.7 Words heard: career coached compete the Olympics competition the Internet
(extra: tournament)

Ex.8 2.F 3.T 4.T 5.F 6.F 7.T

Tapescript (Key to ex. 8 are underlined)

Interviewer: How did it make you feel to be on the 1996 Australian Olympic team?

Marg Crowley: Oh I was thrilled. Those were the happiest moments in my life.

I: When you were a kid, did you think you would be here today? I mean, was it your goal to take part in the Olympics?
Did you think you would have a career in sport?

M: Well, not really. In fact it was only this year that I realized I might be in the Olympics.

I: How old were you when you started competing in track and field events. How did you get started?

M: Well, when I was a kid, it was my Dad who coached me. And in those days – I mean when I was really young -
I played in lots of kids' team sports. Then, when I was 14, I had a trip to Utah. This was to compete in a few track events.

I: I see. So how long have you been training in the US?

M: For three days so far. In Raleigh. And I'm going to do some training in Atlanta for three or four days, just before the Olympics.

I: After the Olympics are over, are you going to do any sight-seeing? Do you plan to stay in America for a while before you go back home?

M: I'd like to. But I probably won't be able to stay for long. I have to get back to work. And then I may be going to Europe for more competitions. But this will depend on how I do in the Olympics. Perhaps I'll do badly. Who knows? But I'll only go the Europe if I do well.

I: And when you get back to Australia, would you like to answer questions sent to you from kids all over the world? And perhaps have them posted on the Internet?

M: Well I can try...

Ex.9 2.she would finish school 3.he would go to the football match 4.he would make a phone call and be back
5.she would not be in Batumi 6.it would not take him long to do that 7.she would see me/us

Ex.10 2.would design 3.would do 4.would train 5.would create 6.would marry

UNIT 24 THE ANCIENT OLYMPICS

Ex.2 2.D 3.A 4.E (extras: C, F)

Ex.3 2.F 3.T 4.F 5.T 6.T

Ex.4 2.competition 3.crown 4.competitor 5.athlete 6.unfair

Ex.5 2.a 3.d 4.c 5.f/d 6.e

Ex.6 2.ancient Greece 3.came from 4.won crowns 5.perform 6. wrestling 7. gave thanks

Ex.8 2.Miriam 3.Colleen 4 Irakli 5.Nico 6.Colleen

Tapescript (Key to ex. 8 are underlined)

1. Hi. My name is Colleen and I'm from Ireland. I love swimming. In fact it's my dream to compete in the Olympics one day. Perhaps I'm crazy to even dream about it, but I don't care. Tomorrow I'll be swimming as usual, all morning. I'm going to work hard and I'm going to try. Because whatever happens – whether I get to the Olympics or not - I'll be able to look back and say, "Well...at least I did my best".

2. Hello. I am Irakli from Georgia. Football is my favorite sport. During the Olympics I always watch it on TV. The Games are really special. It's great to see people from different countries. National Olympic football teams of Argentina and Spain will be playing next week and I am looking forward to the match.

3. Hi. I'm Miriam and I'm from Israel. I am an Olympics fan because they make me feel optimistic. That's rare these days. I mean, just look at the news - it's always about money, wars, politics, pollution... OK, I know all these things are important, but sometimes I just get tired of them. After all, why are we on this planet? It's to be as healthy and happy as possible, isn't it? To work together and do our best. That's how I see the Olympics - a positive symbol in a negative world.

4. Hi. I am Nico and I'm from Greece. The Games should always be held in the same place – that's what I think. At the moment it's ridiculous. Every four years a different city has to spend huge amounts of money to organise the games. It's a waste of money.

Ex.9 2.had eaten 3.had already closed 4.had gone 5.had taken 6.had already started 7.had been

Ex.10 2.Irakli had read the book... 3.His family had lived there since 1998..... 4.The audience had fallen asleep.... 5.After I had told her the truth I felt... 6. Niko had already taken skiing lessons for a month... 7. Her parents had already returned...

Ex.11 2.had stayed 3.had crossed 4.had kept 5.had been 6.had walked 7. had driven

REVISION SIX UNITS 21-24

Ex. 1 2... as carefully as John. 3... as fluently as he (did). 4... would never give up sports. 5... would spend two weeks here/there. 6....does not (doesn't) type as fast as Maria. 7... as well as Nini (does). 8...would go sightseeing this/that morning. 9...would watch a new French film this/that weekend. 10....would buy some sandwiches here/there. 11.... runs fast. 12.....not as good as I expected.

Ex. 2 2.He will be leaving the house at 8.30. 3.He will be arriving at work at 9. 4.He will be working from 9 to 6. 5.He will be having lunch at 12. 6.He will be leaving work at 6. 7.He will be meeting his friends at 6.30. 8.He will be driving home at 7.30. 9. He will be having late dinner at 8. 10. He will be reading newspapers from 9 to 10. 11.He will be watching TV from 10 to 11. 12. He will be sleeping at 11.30.

Ex. 3 2.had finished 3.had left 4.had done 5.had seen 6.had waited 7.had lived 8.had already started 9.had never flown 10.had never practised 11.had gone 12.had just taken

Ex. 4 2.tour guide 3.unique sights 4.open-air museum 5.recovered from 6.reach the goal 7.sightseeing tours 8.triple jump 9.were flooded 10.stay fit 11.strong will 12.beat the record (extra: satisfied with)

Ex. 5 2.შეჯახება 3.შეჯიბრი (არს.) 4.გვირგვინი 5.სპორტსმენი/მძღვოსანი 6. შეჯიბრი (ზმნა) 7. შედეგები 8.ომი 9.სურვილი/ნებისყოფა 10. მეჩეთი 11.გამაოგნებელი 12.უსამართლო 13.ციხე-სიმაგრე 14.ახალგაზრდული ნაკრები 15.დამოუკიდებელი 16.მიმზიდველი 17.სრუტე 18.მიზანდასახული 19.მწვრთნელი, მსაჯი 20.ნანობს 21.ინდეფერენტული, გულგრილი 22.წარმატებული 23.სამართლიანი, პატიოსანი 24.მიღწევა (არს.) 25.დარწმუნებული, გულდაჯერებული 26.მოტივაცია 27.უცხოელი 28.ძლიერი გატაცებასხეულის დაზიანება 29.წყალდიდობა 30.დამნაშავე, ბრალეული.